PF 3109
.W4
Copy 1

PF 3109
.W4
Copy 1

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
Class PF3109
.W4
No.
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

Wendeborn, Gebhard Friedrich August

WENDEBORN'S

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

Eleventh Edition,

ENTIRELY REMODELLED BY

A. HEIMANN,

PH. DR. UNIVERSITY, BERLIN;

AND PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

AT UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.

LIBRARY OF THE CITY OF LONDON

LONDON:

LONGMAN AND CO.; SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.; WHITTAKER AND CO.;
DULAU AND CO.; E. HODGSON; CAPES AND CO.; AND D. NUTT.

1849.

PF3109
.W4

LONDON:
GILBERT & RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.

PREFACE

TO THE

ELEVENTH EDITION.

When first I undertook to review "Wendeborn's German Grammar" for the Eleventh Edition, it was my wish so to improve, complete, and simplify it, that it should correspond to the present state of German Grammar, as a science taught to English students. With this aim in view, I have entirely changed, not only the system of declension and conjugation, but every chapter of the Accidence; I have added, as a Second Part, the doctrine on the formation of words; and, as a Third Part, a comprehensive view of the Syntax. In order to gain space for these necessary alterations and additions, I have omitted the occasional exercises, the dialogues, the vocabulary, and other parts of less moment.

This Edition has thus become, instead of a Revision, an entirely New Work, differing in every point of importance from the original plan, and standing to it exactly in the same relation as the theory of Grammar of our days stands to that which was

adopted, in Germany, fifty years ago. With reference to other performances of a similar kind, I dare hope that, having conscientiously accomplished a difficult and intricate task, I may see this book, in its present shape, obtain an honourable place in the rank of those grammatical works on the German language, which have served us all as guides during a number of years, and which for learning and method are deservedly held in high estimation by the public.

The original authorities which I have generally consulted, are the writings of Becker, Schmitthenner, and Götzinger; but I feel particularly indebted to Heyse's Dictionary and Grammar of the German language (Handwörterbuch der deutschen Sprache, 3 vols. Ausführliches Lehrbuch der deutschen Sprache, 2 vols.).

A. H.

University College, London,
February, 1849.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

Preface iii
Tables I. and II. . . . . xii & xiii

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

SECTION I.—ON THE LETTERS AND THEIR PRONUNCIATION.

§ 1. The Alphabet 1
§ 2. Pronunciation of Vowels . . . . . ib.
§ 3. Pronunciation of Consonants 3
A. Of simple Consonants . . . . . ib.
B. Of compound Consonants 5
§ 4. Orthography 6
§ 5. On the Accent 10
A. Of simple Words . . . . . ib.
B. Of compounded Words 11
C. Of double Compounds 12

SECTION II.—ON NOUNS.

Ch. I.—The Articles . . . . . ib.
Ch. II.—On Substantives 13
§ 1. On the Gender of Substantives . . . . . ib.
I. On the Gender of Names of Persons and Animals ib.
II. On the Gender of Names of Things 15
A. According to Signification . . . . . ib.
B. According to Form 16
C. Foreign Substantives 18
D. Substantives of more than one Gender . . 19
§ 2. On the Declension of Substantives 21
Examples 22

PAGE

§ 3. Observations to the Declensions 26
I. To the First Declension . . . . . ib.
II. To the Second 29
III. To the Third 30
IV. To the Fourth 31
1. On the Genitive Singular . . . . ib.
2. On the e of the Dative 32
3. On the Nominative Plural with e . . . ib.
4. On the Nominative Plural with en or n . . 33
5. On the Nominative Plural with er . . . 34
§ 4. On Substantives of different Declensions . . . ib.
1. Substantives with the same Form and different Meanings . . . . . ib.
2. With the same Meaning and different Forms in Plural 37
Observations :—
1. Compounds with Mann 38
2. Substantives without Plural . . . . ib.
3. Substantives without Singular 39
§ 5. On the Declension of Proper Nouns . . . . ib.
Ch. III.—On Adjectives 41
§ 1. On the Declension of Adjectives . . . . ib.
Observations to the First Declension . . . 44
Observations to the Second 45
Observations to the Third 46
§ 2. General Observations . . . . . ib.
§ 3. On the Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives . . 48
Ch. IV.—On Numbers 52
§ 1. Cardinal Numbers . . . . . ib.
§ 2. On the Declension of Cardinal Numbers . . . 53
§ 3. General Observations 55
§ 4. Ordinal Numbers 57
§ 5. Observations 58
§ 6. Indefinite Numbers 59
Ch. V.—On Pronouns 63
§ 1. Personal Pronouns . . . . . ib.
§ 2. Possessive Pronouns 65
§ 3. Demonstrative Pronouns 68
§ 4. Relative Pronouns 70
§ 5. Interrogative Pronouns 73
§ 6. Indefinite Pronouns 75

SECTION III.—ON VERBS.

PAGE

§ 1. Conjugation of the Auxiliaries 78
1. Sein . . . . . ib.
2. Haben 80
3. Werden 83
§ 2. Conjugation of Verbs Active 85
§ 3. Conjugation of Verbs Passive 90
§ 4. Conjugation of Verbs Neuter 94
§ 5. Conjugation of Reflective Verbs 97
§ 6. Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs 102
1. Like a Verb Neuter . . . . . ib.
2. Like a Verb Reflective . . . . . ib.
3. Like a Verb Active 103
§ 7. Conjugation of nominally Irregular Verbs . . . 105
§ 8. Conjugation of really Irregular Verbs . . . 110
Observations on the Conjugation of Derivative Verbs and of Derivatives from Verbs Neuter . . . 111
§ 9. List of all Irregular Verbs 114
§ 10. Compounded Verbs, separable and inseparable . . 123

SECTION IV.—ON ADVERBS.

Ch. I.—On the different kinds of Adverbs 127
§ 1. Adverbs of Place . . . . . ib.
§ 2. Adverbs of Time 128
§ 3. Adverbs of Number and Order 130
§ 4. Adverbs of Quantity and Intensity . . . . . ib.
§ 5. Adverbs of Interrogation 131
§ 6. Adverbs of Affirmation and Negation . . . ib.
Ch. II.—On the Comparison of Adverbs . . . . . ib.

SECTION V.—ON PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, AND INTERJECTIONS.

Ch. I.—On Prepositions 132
Ch. II.—On Conjunctions 133
Ch. III.—On Interjections 134

PART II.—ON THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

PAGE

Ch. I.—On the Roots of the German Language . . . 136
1. On the Character of German Words . . . ib.
2. Comparison between German and English Roots 137
3. Difference between German and English Roots . ib.
I. In the Vowels . . . . . ib.
II. In the Consonants 138
Ch. II.—On the Formation of Substantives 140
§ 1. On Primitive Substantives . . . . . ib.
§ 2. On Substantives derived by Suffixes 141
§ 3. On Substantives derived by Prefixes 146
§ 4. On Substantives formed by Composition . . . 147
Ch. III.—On the Formation of Adjectives 150
§ 1. On Primitive Adjectives . . . . . ib.
§ 2. On Adjectives derived by Suffixes . . . . ib.
§ 3. On Adjectives derived by Prefixes 158
§ 4. On Adjectives formed by Composition . . . ib.
Ch. IV.—On the Formation of Numbers 160
Ch. V.—On the Formation of Verbs . . . . . ib.
§ 1. By derivation without Suffixes . . . . . ib.
§ 2. By derivation with Suffixes 161
§ 3. By derivation with Prefixes 163
§ 4. By Composition 170
Ch. VI.—On the Formation of Adverbs 171
Ch. VII.—On the Formation of Prepositions 174
Ch. VIII.—On the Formation of Conjunctions 175

PART III.—SYNTAX.

SECTION I.—ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

Ch. I.—On the different kinds of Sentences 177
§ 1. Chief and Subordinate Sentences . . . . ib.
§ 2. On the Form of Sentences 178
Ch. II.—Arrangement of Words in German Sentences . . 179
§ 1. In chief Simple Sentences . . . . . ib.
§ 2. In chief Compound Sentences 183
§ 3. In Subordinate Sentences 184

SECTION II.—ON THE USE OF NOUNS IN SENTENCES.

PAGE

Ch. I.—On the Use of Articles 187
Ch. II.—On the Use of Substantives 191
§ 1. On the Use of Singular and Plural . . . . ib.
§ 2. On Substantives in Apposition 192
§ 3. On the Use of the Nominative . . . . . ib.
§ 4. On the Use of the Genitive 193
1. After Verbs . . . . . ib.
2. After Adjectives 197
3. After Substantives, as a Genitive Partitive . 200
4. As a Genitive of Quality . . . . . ib.
5. After Prepositions 202
6. As an Adverb . . . . . ib.
§ 5. On the Use of the Dative 203
1. As *Dativus commodi* . . . . . ib.
2. After simple Verbs Neuter 204
3. After derived Verbs Neuter 205
4. After Prepositions 206
§ 6. On the Use of the Accusative . . . . . ib.
1. After Verbs Active . . . . . ib.
2, 3. After Verbs Impersonal 207
4. After Verbs Neuter . . . . . ib.
5. After fragen and lehren 208
6. After nennen, &c. . . . . ib.
7. After heißen 209
8. After laſſen . . . . . ib.
9. After Verbs and Adjectives of Weight, Measure 210
10. Instead of the Genitive after Adjectives . . ib.
11. After Prepositions . . . . . ib.
Ch. III.—On the Use of Adjectives 211
Ch. IV.—On the Use of Numerals 214
Ch. V.—On the Use of Pronouns 215
§ 1. Of Personal Pronouns . . . . . ib.
§ 2. Of Possessive Pronouns 219
§ 3. Of Demonstrative Pronouns 221
§ 4. Of Relative Pronouns 223

SECTION III.—ON THE USE OF VERBS.

Ch. I.—On Numbers and Persons 225
Ch. II.—On Tenses 226

PAGE

§ 1. On the Present 226
§ 2. On the Imperfect . . . . . ib.
§ 3. On the Perfect 227
§ 4. On the Pluperfect . . . . . ib.
§ 5. On the Future Tenses . . . . . ib.
Ch. III.—On the Use of the Modes 228
§ 1. On the Indicative . . . . . ib.
§ 2. On the Subjunctive in general 229
§ 3. On the different Subjunctive Tenses 232
§ 4. On the Imperative 233
§ 5. On the Infinitive 235
I. Without the Particle ʒu . . . . . ib.
II. With ʒu 236
§ 6. On the Participles in general 238
§ 7. On the Participle Present . . . . . ib.
§ 8. On the Participle Past 242
Ch. IV.—On the Use of the different kinds of Verbs . . 244
§ 1. On the Auxiliaries . . . . . ib.
§ 2. On the Passive . . . . . ib.
§ 3. On the Verbs Neuter 245
§ 4. On the Verbs Reflective 247
§ 5. On the Verbs of Mood 249

SECTION IV.—ON THE USE OF PARTICLES.

Ch. I.—On the Use of Adverbs 252
Ch. II.—On Prepositions 258
§ 1. On the Position of Prepositions . . . . . ib.
§ 2. On Prepositions with the Genitive 259
§ 3. On Prepositions with Genitive and Dative . . 260
§ 4. On Prepositions with the Dative 261
§ 5. On Prepositions with the Accusative . . . 265
§ 6. On Prepositions with the Dative and Accusative . 268
I. On their Construction . . . . . ib.
II. On the Use of them 269
Ch. III.—On the Use of Conjunctions 274
§ 1. On Copulative Conjunctions . . . . . ib.
§ 2. On Adversative Conjunctions 275
§ 3. On Disjunctive Conjunctions 277
§ 4. On Conjunctions of Time and Place . . . . ib.
§ 5. On Conjunctions of Quality and Quantity . . . 278

PAGE

§ 6. On Conjunctions of Cause and Effect . . . 230
§ 7. On the particular Use of some of them . . . 231
§ 8. On Conjunctions of grammatical dependence . . 234
CH. IV.—On the Construction of Interjections . . . 236

TABLE I.

THE PRINTED GERMAN ALPHABET.

English.	Capital German.	Small German.	Name.	English.	Capital German.	Small German.	Name.
a	𝔄	𝔞	ah	n	𝔑	𝔫	enn
b	𝔅	𝔟	bay	o	𝔒	𝔬	oh
c	ℭ	𝔠	tsay	p	𝔓	𝔭	pay
d	𝔇	𝔡	day	q	𝔔	𝔮	koo
e	𝔈	𝔢	eh	r	ℜ	𝔯	err
f	𝔉	𝔣	eff	s	𝔖	ſ ß	ess
g	𝔊	𝔤	gay	t	𝔗	𝔱	tay
h	ℌ	𝔥	hah	u	𝔘	𝔲	ooh
i	ℑ	𝔦	ee	v	𝔙	𝔳	fou
j	𝔍	𝔧	yot	w	𝔚	𝔴	vay
k	𝔎	𝔨	kah	x	𝔛	𝔵	ix
l	𝔏	𝔩	ell	y	𝔜	𝔶	Ipsilon
m	𝔐	𝔪	emm	z	ℨ	𝔷	tset

THE GERMAN ALPHABET.

CAPITAL LETTERS.

A B C D E F

G H I J K L M

N O P Q R S

T U V W X Y Z

SMALL LETTERS.

a b c d e f f g h i

j k l m n o p q r s

s s t u v w x y z

UMLAUTE OR MODIFIED VOWELS.

Ae Oe Ue

DOUBLE CONSONANTS.

ff ss st ss

THE ALPHABET EXEMPLIFIED.

THE LORD'S PRAYER

FROM LUTHER'S TRANSLATION OF THE BIBLE.

Unser Vater in dem Himmel.
Dein Name werde geheiligt.
Dein Reich komme. Dein Wille
geschehe auf Erden, wie im
Himmel. Unser täglich Brod
gieb uns heute. Und vergieb
uns unsere Schulden, wie wir
unseren Schuldigern vergeben.
Und führe uns nicht in Versu-
chung, sondern erlöse uns von
dem Uebel. Denn dein ist das
Reich und die Kraft und die
Herrlichkeit in Ewigkeit.

Amen.

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

SECTION I.—ON THE LETTERS AND THEIR PRONUNCIATION.

§ 1. THE ALPHABET.

THE German alphabet contains twenty-six letters. In print they resemble the black-letter type used in old English books, vide Table I.; in writing they differ in many respects from the written English characters, vide Table II.

§ 2. PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS.

A. Of pure Vowels.

There are six pure vowels in the German alphabet, a, e, i, o, u, y.

a is pronounced like *a* in *rather, bar, shark;* for example, gar, ready; Mal, aim; Lamm, lamb.

e sounds like *a* in *fare, bare, lake;* for example, her, hither; der, the; er, he; Erde, earth; Rede, speech.

i corresponds to the *ee* in *bee;* for example, mir, to me; dir, to thee; Himmel, heaven.

o does not differ from *o* in *go;* for example, Mond, moon; Morgen, morning; Ton, sound; Brot, bread.

u sounds like *oo* in *boot;* for example, Bruder, brother; gut, good; Hut, hat.

y *a.* in German words has the sound of the German i, by which it is now always replaced; for example, Ygel, hedgehog, is now written Igel; *b.* In words derived from the Greek it sounds like the German i, when they are current in conversational language, as, Syrup, syrup; Asyl, asylum; Tyrann, tyrant; Cypresse, cypress: but in words not of common use it sounds like the French *u* in *crut, fut;* for example, Cyrus, Tyrus, Lyceum.

Obs. 1. Vowels are short—*a.* when followed by a double consonant, as Hämmer, hammer; Teller, plate; finster, dark; Borste, bristle; Künde, notice. *Except* Adler, eagle; Arzt, physician; Bart, beard; Papst, pope; stets, constantly; Krebs, crab; Mond, moon; Obst, fruit; Trost, consolation: —*b.* in suffixes containing e, as Eng-el, angel; Hak-en, hook; Brud-er, brother:—*c.* in the prefixes ab, er, ver, weg, zer:—*d.* in the monosyllables an, on; bin, am; bis, till, das, the; des, of the; es, it; hat, has; hin, thither; im, in the; in, in; man, one; mit, with; ob, whether; um, around; von, from; was, what; zum, to the.

Obs. 2. In all other cases vowels are long.

Obs. 3. The prolongation of a vowel is often, besides, pointed out to the eye; this is done in one of three ways: *a.* by adding an h; *b.* by doubling the vowel; *c.* by adding an e. The first five vowels can be prolonged by an additional h, as Kahn, boat; Lehrer, teacher; ihr, you; Bohne, bean; Fuhre, conveyance. Three vowels can be prolonged by doubling, as baar, ready; Beere, berry; Boot, boat. By an addition of an e only i can be prolonged, as Bier, beer.

B. Of modified Vowels.

Three vowels, a, o, u, lose their clear sound by a modification of the original tone. This is pointed out by putting two commas or a small e over them,

as ä, ö, ü—å, ȯ, ů; and when they are capitals, the e is printed near them on the right, as Äe, Öe, Üe.

å is pronounced like *a* in *bat, cat;* for example, Bär or Bår, bear; Äeste, branches.

ȯ sounds like *œu* in the French *cœur;* for example, Töne or Tȯne, sounds; Öel, oil.

ů corresponds to the *u* in the French *crut, fut;* for example, Brüder or Brůder, brothers; Uebel, evil.

Obs. These modified vowels are long or short, according to the rules of pure vowels: they can also be prolonged by the addition of an h; for example, Räder, wheels; Kräfte, strengths; König, king; Löffel, spoon; müde, tired; Künste, arts; Fähre, ferry; Möhre, carrot; rühmen, to glory: but they can never be doubled, as der Saal, the saloon, *pl.* die Säle, the saloons.

C. Of Diphthongs.

There are five diphthongs in German—ai, ei, au, eu, åu.

ai and ei sound like *i* in *quite;* for example, Kaiser, emperor; Leib, body.

au corresponds to *ou* in *house;* as Laut, tone.

eu and åu have the same sound as *oy* in *boy;* as Leute, people; Räuber, robber.

§ 3. PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS.

A. Of simple Consonants.

b corresponds to the English *b;* only at the end of a word, particularly when preceded by another consonant, it sounds like *p*, as Ball, ball; Kalb, calf.

c, as a single consonant, only occurs in foreign words: it sounds—1, like *k*, when followed by a consonant, or a, o, u, and au; for example, Cratylus, Ctesippus, Cato, Conon, Cunara, Caucasus; 2, like *ts* in all other cases, as Ceres, Cicero, Cyrus, Caesar.

d corresponds to the English *d;* at the end of a word, however, especially when following another consonant, it is pronounced like *t*, as Degen, sword; Bad, bath; Land, country.

f sounds like the English *f*, as frei, free; Dorf, village.

g corresponds to the English *g* in *garb;* for example, gut, good; Tag, day; Trug, deceit.

Obs. When the termination ig is followed by a syllable or word beginning with g or k, it is pronounced like the English consonant *y;* for example, Heilig-keit, holiness; bündig gesagt, concisely said.

h, in the beginning of a syllable, is pronounced like *h* in *hard;* for example, Himmel, heaven; but it is mute when following a vowel, *r*, or *t;* for example, Lohn, reward; Rhede, roadstead; Rath, advice.

j sounds like *y* in *yes*, as Jahr, year; Jugend, youth.

k, l, m, n, p, have each the same sound as in English, as König, king; Leute, people; Mutter, mother; Neffe, nephew; Paar, pair.

q is always followed by *u*, and both together sound like *kf*, as Quelle, spring.

r sounds stronger than the English *r*, and corresponds to the French *r* in *père*, as härt, hard.

s, in the beginning of a word or syllable, sounds like the English *z;* for example, Sonne, sun; Rei-se, journey: but, at the end, like a sharp *s*, as Gras, grass.

t corresponds to the English *t*, as Torte, tart.

Obs. When followed by ion, in foreign words, it sounds like *ts*, and the i like the English consonant *y*, as Nation, nation; Lection, lesson.

v sounds like the English *f*, as Vater, father.

w sounds like the English *v*, as Wurm, vermin.
x sounds like the English *x*, as Axt, axe.
z sounds like *ts*, as Zunder, tinder; Reiz, charm.

B. Of double and compounded Consonants.

1. Double consonants are pronounced as in English; for example, Widder, ram; hoffen, to hope; voll, full; immer, always; brennen, to burn; essen, to eat; Hütte, cottage.

2. Of compounded consonants the following is to be remarked:

ch is pronounced—*a.* like *k*, when followed by an s in the same syllable, as Dachs, badger; and in words of Greek origin, as Character, character: *b.* like *sh* in words of French origin, as Charade, charade; Chef, chief: *c.* like the Scottish *ch* in Loch Lomond after a, o, u, au; for example, Bach, brook; Koch, cook; Buch, book; Taucher, diver: *d.* like the English consonant *y*, strongly pronounced, after e, i, å, ö, ü, ai, ei, eu, äu, or after a consonant; for example, Becher, goblet; Rich=ter, judge; Bäche, brooks; Köche, cooks; Bücher, books; Laich, spawn; Teich, pond; Seuche, pestilence; räuchern, to perfume; Furche, furrow; Fenchel, fennel.

ck corresponds to a double *k*, as Ecke, corner.

dt corresponds to a *t*, as Brōdt, bread; tōdt, dead.

gn and kn are so pronounced that the *g* and *k* are heard, as gnädig, gracious; Knabe, boy.

ng and nk are pronounced with a nasal sound, like in the English words *longing* and *ranking;* for example, Länge, length; Ranke, tendril.

pf is pronounced like one sound, by closely shutting the lips and immediately uttering the f; for example, Pferd, horse; Hopfen, hops.

ph only occurs in words derived from Greek, and sounds exactly like *f*, as Philosoph, philosopher.

ps, which occurs only in Greek words, is so pronounced that the p can be heard, as Psyche, Psalter.

sch corresponds to the English *sh*, as Fisch, fish; schön, beautiful.

Obs. In derivatives with chen, when the radical syllable or root terminates in s, this s is pronounced with the root, and the ch with the suffix, as bis-chen, little; Häus-chen, little house.

sp and st are pronounced like in English; for example, sprechen, to speak; stehen, to stand.

Obs. In many parts of Germany, and especially in the South, sp and st, when beginning a syllable, sound like *shp* and *sht*.

ß sounds exactly like ss, instead of which it is used—1. at the end of a syllable or word; for example, Haß, hatred: 2. before a t; as größte, greatest: 3. after a diphthong or long vowel, as heißen, to bid; gießen, to pour.

th does not differ from t.

Obs. The h in th originally belonged to the lengthened vowel preceding or following, as rāthen, to guess; Flūth, flood; Nōth, need; Thrāne, tear; Theil, part. The only exceptions are formed by Thŭrm, tower, and Wĭrth, host, in which the vowel is short.

tz sounds like *tts*, as Kat-ze, cat.

§ 4. ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. Each German word is written exactly as it is pronounced; nothing is written that is not pronounced, and nothing pronounced that is not written.

2. Great capitals are used in the following cases:

a. In the beginning of a period.

b. After signs of interrogation (?) and exclamation (!), when they finish a sentence, but not when they are found in the middle of a sentence; for instance, wie kann das geschehen sein? how can this have happened? Ich kann es nicht sagen, I cannot say: but, wie kann das geschehen sein? fragte ich, how can this have happened? did I ask. O daß ich den Brief nur eine Stunde früher erhalten hätte! Wie anders hätte ich gehandelt! O if I had received the letter only one hour sooner! How differently would I have acted! But, daß es doch sich ändern wollte! rief er aus, O if it would only change! he exclaimed.

After a full stop (.), and, at last, after a colon (:), when a quoted sentence follows; for instance, er sagte: Das muß nicht geschehen, he said that must not happen.

c. In the beginning of a line in poetry.

d. In all substantives, be they really such, or only considered as such; for instance, der Vater, the father; das Weiß, the white colour.

e. In the addressed personal pronouns of the plural, Ihr and Sie, you.

Obs. 1. Many substantives have changed into adverbs and prepositions, and are, as such, written with small initials, as theils, partly; flugs, quickly; anfangs, in the beginning; ungefähr, by chance; laut, according; kraft, by authority; mittels, by means. Only the following adverbial substantives are still written with capitals: Morgens, of a morning; Abends, of an evening; Mittags, at noon time; Nachmittags, in the afternoon; Nachts, by night.

Obs. 2. The word mal, when considered as a substantive, is written with a capital, but then separated from the pre-

ceding number or pronoun, as das erste Mal, the first time; dieses Mal, this time.

Obs. 3. Some words are represented in one construction as substantives, whilst in others as adverbs, and accordingly written with capital or small initials, as ich habe Recht, I am right; es ist mir recht, I am satisfied; du hast keine Schuld, it is not thy fault; er ist schuld daran, he is the cause of it; es macht mir Angst, it causes me anxiety; mir wird angst, I get anxious; er thut mir nichts zu Leide, he does me no harm; es thut mir leid, I am sorry; es hat keine Noth, no fear for that; es thut noth, it is needful.

3. On the division of words into syllables the following rules are to be observed:

a. Whilst in English a word is always so divided into its syllables, that the root is separated from the termination, as *long-ing*, *heart-ily*, *point-edly*, this only takes place in German—1. in compounds: 2. in derivatives with prefixes: and, 3. in derivatives with suffixes which begin with a consonant; for instance, Aug=apfel, the ball of the eye; be=ob=achten, to observe; hier=in, in here; ent=erben, to disinherit; sächl=lich, neuter; Frei=heit, liberty; Jüng=ling, youth.

b. In all other cases the division is made according to the following rules:

1. When a consonant stands between two vowels, it belongs to the second vowel, as Sei=de, silk; Bä=der, baths; wa=ten, to wade.

2. When, therefore, derivative suffixes begin with a vowel, they attract the last consonant of the root, as heu=len, to howl; Hei=math, home; kin=disch, childish; Ar=muth, poverty.

3. When two consonants meet, the first belongs to the preceding, and the second to the following syllable, as brül=len, to roar; hem=men, to stop;

eſ=ſen, to eat; Eb=be, ebb; Gar=ten, garden; Hen=kel, handle.

4. The double consonants ch, ck, ph, pf, ſch, ſp, ſt, ß, th, and tz, are considered in writing as one letter, and therefore not separated; and, according to 1, belong to the following syllable, as Sa=che, affair; ba=cken, to bake; ſchim=pfen, to abuse; Pro=phet, prophet; Men=ſchen, human beings; Fi=ſcher, fisherman; wa=ſchen, to wash; Ge=ſpen=ſter, ghosts; ge=ſtern, yesterday; wei=ßen, to whitewash; ra=then, to advise; nu=tzen, to use.

Obs. 1. The consonants pf and ſp are sometimes separable, as Ap=fel, apple; Trop=fen, drop; Knoſ=pe, bud; Weſ=pe, wasp.

Obs. 2. Some separate ck, but then the c must be changed into k; for instance, Bäk=ker, baker.

Obs. 3. Some separate also tz, and write Nut=zen or Nuz=zen instead of Nu=tzen, use.

5. When a vowel has fallen out between two consonants, the division is made where the elision has taken place, as eif=rig (from Eifer), zealous; ad=lig (from Adel), noble; bett=läg=rig (from Lager), bedridden; hung=rig (from Hunger), hungry; ſpeiſ=ten (instead of ſpei=ſe=ten), that they might eat; reiſ=te (instead of rei=ſe=te), that I might travel.

4. The signs of division are two horizontal lines (=). They serve—

a. For separating syllables of one word, and stand, at the end of the line, on the right, as Gelegen=heit, opportunity.

b. For pointing out the connexion of the parts of a compounded word, as Seiden= und Wollenwaaren, silk and woollen merchandize.

§ 5. ON THE ACCENT.

A. Of simple words.

The stress or accent lies, in simple German words, on the vowel of the root; for example, ge'bet, give ye; Gebe't, prayer; e'rblich, hereditary; erbli'ch, turned pale.

Exceptions.—The root has not the accent—

1. In lebe'ndig, alive; leibha'ftig, bodily; wahrha ftig, truly; balſa'miſch, balmy; âthe'riſch, ethereal; melo'diſch, melodious.

2. In nouns derived—

a. By the prefix ant, as A'ntwort, answer.

b. By the prefix un, as U'nrecht, wrong.

Except. Participles and adjectives in bar, lich, ſam, derived from verbs, retain the accent on the root, as ungele'hrt, untaught; unbrau'chbar, useless; untau'glich, unfit; unra'thſam, unadviseable.

c. By the prefix miß, as Mi'ßachtung, despising.

d. By the prefix erz, as E'rzfeind, arch-enemy.

Except. In titles, and in words in which erz gives intensity to the meaning of the root, the accent remains on the radical vowel, as Erz=kâ'mmerer, lord high-chamberlain; erz=du'mm, extremely stupid.

3. Substantives terminating in ei, and adverbs in lei, have the accent on these suffixes, as Türkei', Turkey; Heuchelei', hypocrisy; einerlei', of the same sort.

4. Prince'ß or Prince'ſſin, princess, has the accent on the suffix.

5. The plural forms of substantives feminine in inn, and of foreign words in or, as Königi'nnen, Docto'ren, Profeſſo'ren.

6. The infinitives terminating in iren or ieren, as ſchatti'ren, to shade; halbi'ren, to halve; regie'ren, to rule; ſpazie'ren, to promenade.

7. Words of foreign origin, terminating in al, ant, aſt, ent, ert, ier, ion, ie, ik, have the accent on these suffixes, as Genera'l, Elepha'nt, Phanta'ſt, whimsical; Stude'nt, Conce'rt, Offizie'r, Natio'n, Poeſie', poetry; Politi'k, politics.

Obs. Hiſto'rie, history, Fami'lie, family, and Poe'tik, art of poetry, have the accent on the second syllables; besides, in the two first, and in Li'lie, lily, Glo'rie, glory, the final ie is pronounced like the English *ye* in *yes*.

B. Of compounded words.

In compounded words the accent rests on the radical syllable of that part which qualifies the meaning of the principal word; for example, in Sta'llknecht, stable-boy, the principal word, Knecht, boy, is qualified by the compound Stall, stable; the chief accent lies, therefore, on Sta'll; likewise, Kau'f=mann, merchant; Schu'lbuch, school-book; Sta'dttheil, part of the town.

Obs. 1. As the qualifying word in compound Substantives always precedes the principal word, therefore the chief accent in compound Substantives must rest on the first compound; for example, Ti'schtuch, table-cloth. In adverbs, however, the principal word often precedes that which qualifies it; on that account the chief accent falls on the second compound, as berga'n, up the mountain; treppau'f treppa'b, up and down stairs; feldei'n, into the field; dami't, in order that; darau'ś, therefrom; waru'm, why.

Obs. 2. In separable verbs (cf. sect. iii. § 10), and words derived from them, the accent rests on the particle; for example, u'mgehen, to have intercourse; U'mgang, intercourse; u'mgånglich, sociable; a'nfangen, to begin; A'nfang, beginning; vo'rziehen, to prefer; Vo'rzug, preference.

Obs. 3. But verbs inseparable (cf. sect. iii. § 10. 3), and their derivatives, retain the accent on the vowel of the verb; for example, umge'hen, to go round; unumgå'nglich, indispensable; volle'nden, to accomplish; Volle'ndung, accomplishment. Of this rule the following words are exceptions: Wi'derspruch, contradiction, from widerspre'chen, to contradict; U'mfang, circuit, from umfa'ngen, to encircle; U'nterhalt, support, from unterha'lten, to support.

Exceptions.—1. In many compounded Substantives and Adjectives the chief accent rests on the principal word, as Jahrze'hend, decennium; Nordo'st, north-east; Neuho'lland, New Holland; leibei'gen, serf; vollko'mmen, perfect; großmå'chtig, great and mighty: par-

ticularly in compounds with all, as allwei'se, all-wise; allmä'chtig, all-mighty.

2. In particles the chief accent rests on the principal word—

a. In compounds with da, wo, was; as da'für, for that; da'raus, out of that; da'mit, with that; wa'rum, for what (to be distinguished from the same words with the accent on the qualifying word, cf. *Obs.* 1).

b. In compounds with all, viel, voll, wohl; as allhie'r, here; vielleicht, perhaps; vollau'f, in plenty; wohla'n, well then.

C. Of double compounds.

If a word is compounded of two parts, one of which is a compound already, as Kaufmanns=sohn, merchant's son, Kriegs=schauplatz, scene of war, the chief accent rests on the first part, *i.e.* that which qualifies; and a secondary accent on the second part, *i.e.* the principal word of the whole compound; therefore, Kau"fmanns=so'hn, Krie"gs=schau'platz, Schre"ckens=na'chricht, news of terror.

Exceptions.—A few double compounds take the chief accent on the second part, as Pa'lm=so"nntag, Palm-Sunday; Cha'r=frei"tag, Good-Friday; O'ber=po"stamt, chief post-office.

SECTION II.—ON NOUNS.

All nouns are declinable in German; they have three genders—masculine, feminine, and neuter; four cases—nominative, genitive, dative, accusative; and two numbers—singular and plural, except the indefinite article, which cannot have a plural.

CHAP. I. THE ARTICLES.

The definite article is der, die, das; the indefinite ein, eine, ein. They are declined in the following way:—

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

		Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
SING.	Nom.	Der,	Die,	Das,	the
	Gen.	Des,	Der,	Des,	of the
	Dat.	Dem,	Der,	Dem,	to the
	Acc.	Den,	Die,	Das,	the

THE PLURAL FOR ALL THE THREE GENDERS.

Nom.	Die,	the
Gen.	Der,	of the
Dat.	Den,	to the
Acc.	Die,	the

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	Ein,	Eine,	Ein,	a
Gen.	Eines,	Einer,	Eines,	of a
Dat.	Einem,	Einer,	Einem,	to a
Acc.	Einen,	Eine,	Ein,	a

CHAP. II. ON SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 1. THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

I. Gender of Names of Persons and Animals.

1. Names of male individuals are masculine, as Mann, man; Löwe, lion; Gott, God; Geist, spirit.

2. Names of female individuals are feminine, as Frau, woman; Löwinn, lioness; Göttinn, goddess; Nixe, nymph.

Exceptions are—*a.* Weib, *n.* woman; Mensch, *n.* wench: *b.* diminutives—Mädchen, *n.* a girl; Fräulein, *n.* young lady, miss: *c.* the three compounds—Mannsperson, *f.*, and Mannsbild, *n.* man; Frauenzimmer, *n.* woman.

3. Names of the young ones are neuter, as Kind, child; Lamm, lamb; Kalb, calf.

4. Names of the species, and of an individual of this species, without reference to its natural sex, are:

a. Neuter for *animals*, as Thier, animal; Pferd, horse; Rind, cattle; Schaf, sheep; Huhn, fowl.

b. Masculine or *feminine* for *men* always, and sometimes for *animals*, as Mensch, *m.* human being; Gast, *m.* male or female guest; Zwilling, *m.* male or female twin; Günstling, *m.* male or female favourite; Person, *f.* male or female person; Waise, *f.* male or female orphan.

Obs. 1. Names of foreign animals are neuter, as Kameel, camel; Dromedar, dromedary; Krokodil, crocodile; Lama, Zebra; Känguruh, kangaroo.

Obs. 2. In some cases there are different names for the male, female, the young one, and the species of human beings and domestic animals, as:

Der Mann, man; die Frau, woman; das Kind, child; der Mensch, human being:—der Stier or Ochs, ox; die Kuh, cow; das Kalb, calf; das Rind, cattle:—der Hengst, stallion; die Stute, mare; das Füllen, foal; das Pferd or Roß, horse:—der Widder or Hammel, ram; das Lamm, lamb; das Schaf, sheep:—der Eber, the boar; die Sau, sow; das Ferkel, farrow; das Schwein, pig:—der Bock, he-goat; die Ziege or Geiß, she-goat; das Zicklein, kid:—der Hahn, cock; die Henne, hen; das Küchlein, chicken; das Huhn, fowl.

Obs. 3. There are often names given for male and female relations, and one word, besides, implying both sexes, as:

Der Vater, father; die Mutter, mother; Eltern, parents:—der Sohn, son; die Tochter, daughter; das Kind, child:—der Bruder, brother; die Schwester, sister; das Geschwister, brother and sister.

II. Gender of Names of Things.

A. According to signification.

1. Masculine are names of months, seasons, mountains, winds, regions, days, as der Februar; der Frühling, spring; der Chimborasso; der Nordwind, Ostwind, the north wind, the east wind; der Süden, the south; der Westen, the west; der Sonntag, Sunday.

Exceptions.—Frühjahr, spring, is neuter, on account of the neuter gender of Jahr; and Mittwoche, Wednesday, is feminine, on account of the feminine gender of Woche.

2. Feminine are the names of rivers, as die Donau, the Danube; die Elbe, the Elbe; die Tiber, the Tiber; die Themse, the Thames.

Exceptions.—A great many rivers are, however, masculine, as Rhein, Rhine; Don, Ganges, Orinocco, Ohio, La Plata, &c.

3. Neuter are—*a.* Most collective names, and names of *matters, stuffs,* and *metals,* as das Volk, the people; das Vieh, the brute animals; das Wild, game; das Haar, hair; das Korn, corn; das Heer, the army; das Holz, wood; das Gras, grass; das Moos, moss; das Obst, fruit; das Fleisch, meat; das Blut, blood; das Wasser, Bier, Oel, water, beer, oil; das Brot, bread; das Salz, Mehl, Pulver, salt, flour, powder; das Eisen, Gold, Silber, Kupfer, Zinn, Blei, iron, gold, silver, copper, tin, lead.

Exceptions.—Butter, butter; Milch, milk; Dinte, ink, are feminine: Wald, forest; Hain, grove; Sand, sand; Staub, dust; Thon, clay; Lehm, loam; Wein, wine; Käse, cheese, are masculine: of metals, Stahl, steel; Zink, zinc; Wißmuth, bismuth; Kobalt, cobalt, are masculine: and Platina is feminine and neuter.

b. Names of countries and cities, as Deutschland, Germany; England, England; Italien, Italy; Schweden, Sweden; Berlin, London; Wien, Vienna; Rom, Rome.

Exceptions.—1. Feminine are Pfalz, Palatinate; Schweiz, Switzerland; Krimm, Crimea; Mark, Mark; Lausitz, Lusatia: all in ei, as Türkei, Turkey; Wallachei, Wallachia, &c.: and compounds with au, as Moldau, Moldavia. 2. Masculine, Peloponnes, Peloponnesus; and compounds with gau, as Rheingau, district of the Rhine; Breisgau, Brisgau.

Obs. Names of places formed by compounds remain neuter, even if the principal word be masculine or feminine, as Wittenberg, *n.*, although Berg is masculine; Halberstadt, *n.* Magdeburg, *n.*, although Stadt and Burg are feminine.

c. All words which, without being substantives, are considered as such by the preceding article, as das Grün, the green colour; das Schöne, what is beautiful; das Einerlei, the sameness; das Mein und Dein, my and thy property; das A, B, C, the alphabet; das Wenn, that if.

B. According to form.

1. *Primitive Substantives.*

a. Masculine are—1. monosyllables which, only through a change of vowel, are derived from verbal roots, without any additional termination, as der Bruch, the rupture; der Spruch, the sentence; der Stich, the sting; der Drang, the urgency; der Fund, the thing found, &c.—from brechen, to break; sprechen, to speak; stechen, to sting; dringen, to urge; finden, to find.

Exceptions.—Neuter are Band, ribbond; Maaß, measure; Leid, suffering; Floß, raft; Schloß, lock,—from binden, to bind; messen, to measure; leiden, to suffer; fließen, to flow; schließen, to shut.

2. The greatest number of verbal primitives in el, en, er, as der Stachel, the sting; der Hagel, the hail; der Schlüssel, the key; der Bissen, the morsel; der Knochen, the bone; der Regen, the rain; der Anger, the down; der Finger, the finger; der Trichter, the funnel.

Exceptions.—1. Many of these primitives in el are feminine, as Schüssel, dish; Wurzel, root; Gurgel, throat.

2. The following, in el, are neuter, Bündel, bundle; Mandel, number fifteen; Mittel, means; Nößel, pint; Rudel, troop; Segel, sail; Siegel, seal; Wiesel, weasel.

3. Six in en are neuter, Becken, basin; Kissen, pillow; Laken, (bed-) cloth; Lehen, fief; Wappen, coat of arms; Zeichen, sign.

4. Many in er are either feminine or neuter, as:

Feminine, Ader, vein; Auster, oyster; Butter, butter; Feder, pen; Kiefer, pine; Leiter, ladder; Mauer, wall, &c.

Neuter, Alter, age; Fenster, window; Feuer, fire; Lager, camp; Messer, knife; Ruder, rudder, &c.

b. Feminine are words derived from verbs by addition of a final t, ft, st, d, de, e, as Geburt, birth; Kunst, art; Ankunft, arrival; Jagd, chase; Kunde, notice; Blume, flower.

Exceptions.—1. Masculine are Brand, brand; Dunst, vapour; Gewinnst, gain; Wust, trash; Verlust, loss; Trost, consolation; Käse, cheese.

2. Neuter are Gespinnst, web; Gesicht, face; Auge, eye; Ende, end; Erbe, inheritance.

2. *Derivatives by suffixes.*

a. Masculine are derivatives in el, er, ing, ling, as Hebel, lever; Leuchter, candlestick; Häring, herring; Silberling, shekel.

Exceptions.—Die Klingel, the bell; die Windel, the swaddling-cloth.

b. Feminine are those in inn, e, heit, keit, ei, niß, schaft, ung, ath, uth, de, as Königinn, queen; Größe, grandeur; Hoheit, highness; Eitelkeit, vanity; Frömmelei, affected piety; Kenntniß, knowledge; Baarschaft, ready money; Hoffnung, hope; Heimath, home; Armuth, poverty; Zierde, ornament.

Exceptions. 1.—Der Zierath, the ornament; der Hornung, the month of February; das Petschaft, the seal.

2. Many in niß are neuter, as Bedürfniß, want; Zeugniß, testimony.

c. Neuter are those in ſel, ſal, thum, tel, and diminutives in chen, el, and lein, as Räthſel, riddle; Königthum, royalty; Drittel, third part; Brüderchen, little brother; Schweſterlein, little sister; das Mädel, little girl.

Exceptions.—Die Drangſal, calamity; die Mühſal, distress; die Trübſal, trouble; der Irrthum, error; der Reichthum, riches; der or das Wachsthum, growth.

3. *Derivatives by prefixes.*

Words derived by prefixes have the same gender as the substantives from which they are formed, as der Undank, ingratitude; die Urſchrift, original; das Unthier, the monster.

Exceptions.—1. Die Antwort, the answer, derived from das Wort, the word.

2. Those derived by the prefix ge are influenced in their gender by this prefix. Most are neuter, as Gebein, bones; Gebirge, chain of mountains; Gewehr, gun. A few are masculine or feminine; namely, der Gedanken, the thought; der Geſang, the song; der Geruch, the smell; der Geſchmack, taste; der Genuß, the enjoyment: die Geduld, patience; die Gefahr, danger; die Geſchwulſt, the swelling; die Geſtalt, the form; die Gewalt, the power.

4. *Compound Substantives.*

These have the gender of the principal word, which is always the second; for example, der Schweſterſohn, the sister's son; die Hausthüre, the door of the house; das Mutterherz, the heart of a mother.

Exceptions.—Die Neunauge, the lamprey (from das Auge, the eye), and several feminine compounds of der Muth, courage; namely, die Anmuth, gracefulness; die Demuth humility; die Großmuth, generosity; die Langmuth, patience; die Sanftmuth, meekness; die Schwermuth, melancholy; die Wehmuth, sadness.

C. Foreign Substantives.

Substantives adopted from foreign languages retain their original gender, as der Kerker, prison (from *carcer*, m.); der Titel, title (from *titulus*, m.); die

Krone, crown (from *corona*, f.); die Natur, nature (from *natura*, f.); das Werk, work (from ἔργον); das Scepter, sceptre (from σκῆπτρον).

Exceptions.—1. The original masculine often changes—*a.* into feminine, as Muſkel, *f.* muscle (*musculus*, m.); Kanzel, *f.* pulpit (*cancellus*, m.); Nummer, *f.* number (*numerus*, m.); Hymne, *f.* hymn (ὕμνος, m.); Mythe, *f.* fable (μῦθος, m.); Roſine, *f.* raisin (French, *le raisin*): *b.* into neuter, as Paradies, *n.* paradise (παράδεισος, m.); Pulver, *n.* powder (*pulvis*, m.); Conſulat, *n.* consulate (*consulatus*, m.).

2. The original feminine is often changed—*a.* into masculine, as Kürbiß, *m.* pumpkin (*cucurbita*, f.); Anker, *m.* anchor (*ancora*, f.); Purpur, *m.* purple (*purpura*, f.); Dom, *m.* cathedral (*domus*, f.): *b.* into neuter, as Fenſter, *n.* window (*fenestra*, f.); Echo, *n.* echo (ἠχώ, f.); Fieber, *n.* fever (*febris*, f.); Abenteuer, adventure (*aventura*, f.).

3. The original neuter often changes—*a.* into masculine, as Tempel, *m.* temple (*templum*); Pfeffer, *m.* pepper (*piper*, n.); Körper, *m.* body (*corpus*, n.); Altar, *m.* altar (*altare*, n.); Punkt, *m.* point (*punctum*): *b.* into feminine, as Orgel, *f.* organ (ὄργανον); Bibel, *f.* Bible (βιβλίον); Lilie, *f.* lily (*lilium*); Kirſche, *f.* cherry (*cerasum*); Pflaume, *f.* plum (*prunum*); Birne, *f.* pear (*pirum*); Praemie, *f.* prize (*præmium*).

D. *Substantives of more than one gender.*

Many words have two, or even three, genders. These have, according to the different gender—1. either a little difference in their form and the same or synonymical meaning; or, 2. the same form and a difference in their signification.

1. Words of the same or synonymical meaning and a difference in their form:—

der Backen, the buttock.
die Backe, the cheek.

der Karren, the cart.
die Karre, the wheel-barrow.

der Leiſten, shoemaker's last.
die Leiſte, the border.

der Nerv, die Nerve, } the nerve.

der Pfriem, die Pfrieme, } the bodkin.

der Pfoſten, die Pfoſte, } the side-post.

der Punkt, the point.
das Punkt, the full-stop.

der Quast, } the tassel.
die Quaste, }

der Quell, (*poet.*) } the
die Quelle, } source.

der Ratz, } the rat.
die Ratze, }

der Ritz, } the crack.
die Ritze, }

der Schurz, the leather apron.
die Schürze, the apron.

der Spalt, } the split.
die Spalte, }

der Spann, the instep.
die Spanne, the span.

der Scherben, } the pot-
die Scherbe, } sherd.

der Trupp, the troop.
die Truppe, band of players.

der Zins, the rent.
die Zinse, the interest.

2. Words of the same form and different meanings:—

die Armuth, poverty.
das Armuth, poor people.

der Band, the volume.
das Band, the ribbond.

der Bauer, the peasant.
das Bauer, the cage.

der Buckel, the hump-back.
die Buckel, the knob.

der Bund, the league.
das Bund, the bunch (of keys).

der Chor, the chorus-song.
das Chor, the choir (of a church).

der Erbe, the heir.
das Erbe, the inheritance.

die Flur, the open field.
der } Flur, { the hall, pas-
die } { sage.

der Geißel or Geisel, hostage.
die Geißel, the scourge.

das Gift, poison.
das } Gift, { poison prepar-
der } { ed in a cup.

die Gift, only in the compound:—
die Mitgift, the dowry.

der Haft, the clasp.
die Haft, the arrest.
das Haft, the day-fly.

der Harz, the Harz mountain.
das Harz, the resin.

der Heide, the heathen.
die Heide, the heath.

§ 2. ON THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

1. The German language has four declensions. The first contains all substantives feminine; the second, all substantives masculine in e; the third, substantives masculine and neuter in el, en, er, lein, and neuter in e with prefix ge; the fourth, all other substantives masculine and neuter.

2. Three rules prevail, without exception, in all declensions:

1. Dative plural terminates in n.

2. Nominative, genitive, and accusative plural have one form.

3. Nominative and accusative in feminine and neuter are alike.

3. The following table gives a view of the four declensions:

I. Fem.	II. Masc. e.	III. Masc. and Neut. el, en, er, lein, Ge—e.	IV. Masc. and Neut.
Singular. not changed.	every-where n.	*Singular.* G. es.	*Singular.* G. es. D. e. A. like nom.
Plural. en.		*Plural.* D. n.	*Plural.* N. e, en, er. G. ——— A. ——— D. adds n to nom. pl.

4. Expressed in words, the preceding table teaches that—

a. In the first declension, substantives feminine are not changed in singular; in plural they take the termination en.

b. In the second declension, substantives masculine

in e add, in all other cases, an n to the nominative singular.

c. In the third declension, substantives masculine and neuter in el, en, er, lein, and neuter in e with prefix ge, add in the genitive singular an s, and an n in the dative plural.

d. In the fourth declension, all other substantives masculine and neuter terminate in singular genitive in es, in the dative in e; the accusative is like nominative: in plural the nominative either terminates in e, en, or er; the genitive and accusative likewise; and, in the dative, an n is added to the nominative plural.

5. *Examples for the Four Declensions.*

First Declension.

Singular.	Plural.
N. die Burg, the castle.	N. die Burgen, the castles.
G. der Burg, of the castle.	G. der Burgen, of the castles.
D. der Burg, to the castle.	D. den Burgen, to the castles.
A. die Burg, the castle.	A. die Burgen, the castles.

In the same way are declined:

die Zeit, the time.	die Pflicht, the duty.
— Last, the load.	— Tugend, the virtue.
— Schrift, the writing.	— Uhr, the watch.
— Art, the kind.	— Welt, the world.
— That, the act.	— Frau, the woman.
— Schlacht, the battle.	— Zahl, the number.

Second Declension.

Singular.	Plural.
N. der Hase, the hare.	N. die Hasen, the hares.
G. des Hasen, of the hare.	G. der Hasen, of the hares.
D. dem Hasen, to the hare.	D. den Hasen, to the hares.
A. den Hasen, the hare.	A. die Hasen, the hares.

In the same way are declined:

der Affe, the ape.
— Barde, the poet.
— Bote, the messenger.
— Bürge, the security.
— Löwe, the lion.
— Riese, the giant.
der Rabe, the raven.
— Zeuge, the witness.
— Neffe, the nephew.
— Türke, the Turk.
— Däne, the Dane.
— Heide, the heathen.

Third Declension.

a. In el:

Singular.	Plural.
N. der Flügel, the wing.	N. die Flügel, the wings.
G. des Flügels, of the wing.	G. der Flügel, of the wings.
D. dem Flügel, to the wing.	D. den Flügeln, to the wings.
A. den Flügel, the wing.	A. die Flügel, the wings.

b. In en:

Singular.	Plural.
N. der Nachen, the boat.	N. die Nachen, the boats.
G. des Nachens, of the boat.	G. der Nachen, of the boats.
D. dem Nachen, to the boat.	D. den Nachen, to the boats.
A. den Nachen, the boat.	A. die Nachen, the boats.

c. In er:

Singular.	Plural.
N. der Führer, the guide.	N. die Führer, the guides.
G. des Führers, of the guide.	G. der Führer, of the guides.
D. dem Führer, to the guide.	D. den Führern, to the guides.
A. den Führer, the guide.	A. die Führer, the guides.

d. In lein:

Singular.	Plural.
N. das Kindlein, the little child.	N. die Kindlein, the little children.
G. des Kindleins, of the little child.	D. der Kindlein, of the little children.

Singular.	Plural.
D. dem Kindlein, to the little child.	D. den Kindlein, to the little children.
A. das Kindlein, the little child.	A. die Kindlein, the little children.

e. In e with prefix Ge:

Singular.	Plural.
N. das Gestade, the shore.	N. die Gestade, the shores.
G. des Gestades, of the shore.	G. der Gestade, of the shores.
D. dem Gestade, to the shore.	D. den Gestaden, to the shores.
A. das Gestade, the shore.	A. die Gestade, the shores.

In the same way are declined:

a.

das Segel, the sail.
der Titel, the title.
das Siegel, the seal.
— Uebel, the evil.
der Himmel, the heaven.
— Engel, the angel.
— Löffel, the spoon.

b.

das Füllen, the foal.
— Zeichen, the sign.
— Mädchen, the girl.
der Brunnen, the well.
— Haken, the hook.
— Kuchen, the cake.
— Schatten, the shadow.

c.

der Adler, the eagle.
— Becher, the goblet.
— der Finger, the finger.
das Laster, vice.
das Messer, the knife.
— Zimmer, the room.
— Ruder, the oar.

d.

das Fräulein, the young lady.
— Büchlein, the little book.
— Bächlein, the little brook.
— Tischlein, the little table.
— Fischlein, the little fish.

e.

das Gebäude, the building.
— Gebirge, the chain of mountains.
— Gefilde, number of fields.
— Gehäuse, the case.
— Gewölbe, the vault.

Fourth Declension.

a. With nominative plural in e.

Singular.	Plural.
N. der Fisch, the fish.	N. die Fische, the fishes.
G. des Fisches, of the fish.	G. der Fische, of the fishes.
D. dem Fische, to the fish.	D. den Fischen, to the fishes.
A. den Fisch, the fish.	A. die Fische, the fishes.

b. With nominative plural in en:

Singular.	Plural.
N. das Ohr, the ear.	N. die Ohren, the ears.
G. des Ohres, of the ear.	G. der Ohren, of the ears.
D. dem Ohre, to the ear.	D. den Ohren, to the ears.
A. das Ohr, the ear.	A. die Ohren, the ears.

c. With nominative plural in er:

Singular.	Plural.
N. das Feld, the field.	N. die Felder, the fields.
G. des Feldes, of the field.	G. der Felder, of the fields.
D. dem Felde, to the field.	D. den Feldern, to the fields.
A. das Feld, the field.	A. die Felder, the fields.

In the same way are declined:

a.	*b.*
das Haar, the hair.	der Staat, the state.
der Berg, the mountain.	— Strahl, the ray of light.
— Blick, the look.	— Halm, the blade.
— Blitz, the lightning.	— Gau, the district.
— Dieb, the thief.	— Thron, the throne.
— Dienst, the service.	— Schmerz, the pain.
— Krebs, the crab.	das Insect, the insect.
das Heer, the army.	— Statut, the statute.
— Schiff, the ship.	der See, the lake.
— Thier, the animal.	— Mast, the mast.
— Stück, the piece.	— Zins, the rent.
— Spiel, the play.	— Dorn, the thorn.

c.

das Bild, the picture.
— Brett, the board.
— Geld, the money.
— Glied, the limb.
— Nest, the nest.
der Geist, the spirit.
der Leib, the body.
— Bösewicht, the wretch.
das Geschlecht, the sex.
— Gemüth, the mind.
— Kleid, the dress.
— Kind, the child.
— Lied, the song.

§ 3. OBSERVATIONS.

I. To the First Declension.

1. Substantives feminine terminating in e, el, or er, add to their plural only n; for example, die Blume, the flower, *pl.* die Blumen; die Schüssel, the dish, *pl.* die Schüsseln;—die Schwester, the sister, *pl.* die Schwestern.

In the same way are declined:

die Blüthe, the blossom.
— Kirche, the church.
— Straße, the street.
— Pflanze, the plant.
— Garbe, the sheaf.
— Mütze, the cap.
— Sache, the affair.
— Fliege, the fly.
— Fabel, the fable.
— Gabel, the fork.
— Kugel, the globe.
— Amsel, the blackbird.
die Kartoffel, the potatoe.
— Schaufel, the shovel.
— Tafel, the table.
— Fackel, the torch.
— Feder, the pen.
— Kammer, the chamber.
— Mauer, the wall.
— Leier, the organ.
— Schulter, the shoulder.
— Fiber, the fibre.
— Natter, the adder.
— Wimper, the (eye) lash.

2. If the nominative singular terminates in ee, as die Armee, the army, die See, the sea, one e is omitted in the formation of the plural; therefore, die Arme-en, the armies; die Se-en, the seas.

3. The two words, Mutter, mother, and Tochter, daughter, have in nominative plural no termination; but they modify the radical vowel, die Mütter, the mothers; die Töchter, the daughters.

4. Many substantives feminine form their nominative plural by the termination e, namely:

a. Thirty-one monosyllables which, besides, modify the radical vowel, these are:

Singular.	Plural.
die Angſt, anxiety	die Aengſte.
— Axt, the axe	— Aexte.
— Bank, the bench	— Bänke.
— Braut, the bride	— Bräute.
— Bruſt, the breast	— Brüſte.
— Fauſt, the fist	— Fäuſte.
— Frucht, the fruit	— Früchte.
— Gans, the goose	— Gänſe.
— Gruft, the grave	— Grüfte.
— Hand, the hand	— Hände.
— Haut, the skin	— Häute.
— Kluft, the cleft	— Klüfte.
— Kraft, the strength	— Kräfte.
— Kuh, the cow	— Kühe.
— Kunſt, the art	— Künſte.
— Laus, the louse	— Läuſe.
— Luft, the air	— Lüfte.
— Luſt, the wish	— Lüſte.
— Macht, the power	— Mächte.
— Magd, the maid	— Mägde.
— Maus, the mouse	— Mäuſe.
— Nacht, the night	— Nächte.
— Nath, the seam	— Näthe.
— Noth, distress	— Nöthe.
— Nuß, the nut	— Nüſſe.
— Schnur, the string	— Schnüre.
— Schwulſt, the swelling	— Schwülſte.
— Stadt, the town	— Städte.
— Wand, the wall	— Wände.
— Wurſt, the sausage	— Würſte.
— Zunft, the guild	— Zünfte.

Obs. The compounds and derivatives of these monosyllables are declined in the same way, except the compounds of Macht—Vollmacht, authority, and Ohnmacht, swoon, have in *pl.* en,—Vollmachten and Ohnmachten.

b. Several compounds, particularly in kunft, as:

Singular.	Plural.
die Ausflucht, the subterfuge	die Ausflüchte.
— Einkunft, (not in use)	— Einkünfte, the revenue.
— Zusammenkunft, the meeting	— Zusammenkünfte.

c. Many substantives in niß, and two in sal, namely:

Singular.	Plural.
die Bedrängniß, the trouble	— Bedrängnisse.
— Kümmerniß, } the grievance	{ — Kümmernisse.
— Bekümmerniß, } the grievance	{ — Bekümmernisse.
— Kenntniß, the acquirement	— Kenntnisse.
— Erkenntniß, the perception	— Erkentnisse.
— Erlaubniß, the permission	— Erlaubnisse.
— Ersparniß, the saving	— Ersparnisse.
— Fäulniß, the rottenness	— Fäulnisse.
— Wildniß, the wilderness	— Wildnisse.
— Mühsal, the trouble	— Mühsale.
— Trübsal, the affliction	— Trübsale.

5. Of some words there, occasionally, is used a genitive and dative singular with the termination n or en. The genitive only occurs in the word Frau, as die Kirche unsrer lieben Frauen, the church of our Lady; and in some compounds, as die Sonnenwärme, the warmth of the sun; der Freudentag, the day of joy; der Erdensohn, the son of earth. The dative in n or en is found in the words Erde, earth; Ehre, honour; Freude, joy; Gnade, grace; Gunst, favour; Heide, heath; Mitte, middle; Seite, side; Schande, shame; Statt, stead; but generally when preceded by a preposition without article, as in Mitten, in the midst; von Gottes Gnaden, by the grace of God.

II. To the Second Declension.

1. The only word der Käse, the cheese, makes an exception, and belongs to the third declension.

2. Many words which are now monosyllables, but formerly had the termination e in nominative singular, therefore belong to this declension, namely:

der Ahn, the ancestor.
— Bär, the bear.
— Christ, the Christian.
— Fink, the bullfinch.
— Fürst, the prince.
— Geck, the simpleton.
— Graf, the count.
— Greif, the griffin.
— Held, the hero.
— Herr, the master.
— Hirt, the shepherd.
der Mensch, the human being.
— Mohr, the moor.
— Narr, the fool.
— Nerv, the nerve.
— Ochs, the ox.
— Prinz, the prince.
— Schenk, the cup-bearer.
— Schöps, the mutton.
— Spatz, the sparrow.
— Thor, fop.

And the following compounds:

der Hagestolz, the bachelor.
— Insaß, the inhabitant.
der Unterthan, the subject.
— Vorfahr, predecessor.

3. Four words—der Tropf, the drop; der Nachbar, the neighbour; der Fels, the rock; der Lump, the scamp, have case-terminations according to this declension; and likewise all national names, as:

der Baier, the Bavarian.
— Pommer, the Pomeranian.
— Kaffer, Caffre.
— Ungar, the Hungarian.
— Bulgar, the Bulgarian.
der Tartar, the Tartar.
— Barbar, the barbarian.
— Kosack, the cossack.
— Wallach, the Wallachian.

4. Foreign words, with the accent on the last syllable (terminating in t, st, ik, ann, ant, ent, arch, graph, krat, log, nom, soph), belong to this declension, as:

der Consona'nt, the consonant.
— Doce'nt, the lecturer.
der Advoca't, the pleader.
— Poe't, the poet.

der Cade'tt, the cadet.
— Phanta'st, the eccentric man.
— Pieti'st, the devotee.
— Katholi'k, the Catholic.
— Tyra'nn, the tyrant.
— Mona'rch, the monarch.
der Geogra'ph, the geographer.
— Democra't, democrat.
— Philolo'g, philologer.
— Physiono'm, physiognomist.
— Philoso'ph, philosopher.

5. Several words, now terminating in e in the nominative singular, originally ended in en, and therefore belong to the third declension. These are:

der Friede, the peace.
— Funke, the spark.
— Gedanke, the thought.
— Glaube, the faith.
— Haufe, the crowd.
der Name, the name.
— Same, the seed.
— Schade, the damage.
— Wille, the will.

III. To the Third Declension.

1. Words which in the nominative singular end in n, do not require an additional n as a termination for the dative plural; for example, der Flecken, the hamlet, *dat. pl.* den Flecken.

2. Several masculine in el, en, er, modify the radical vowel in the plural; these are:

a. In el:

Singular.	Plural.
der Apfel, the apple	die Aepfel.
— Hammel, the wether	— Hämmel.
— Handel, the quarrel	— Händel.
— Mangel, the want	— Mängel.
— Mantel, the cloak	— Mäntel.
— Nabel, the navel	— Näbel.
— Nagel, the nail	— Nägel.
— Sattel, the saddle	— Sättel.
— Schnabel, the beak	— Schnäbel.
— Vogel, the bird	— Vögel.

b. In en:

Singular.	Plural.
der Boden, the bottom	die Böden.
— Bogen, the arch	— Bögen.
— Faden, the thread	— Fäden.
— Garten, the garden	— Gärten.
— Graben, the trench	— Gräben.
— Hafen, the harbour	— Häfen.
— Laden, the shop	— Läden.
— Ofen, the stove	— Oefen.

c. In er:

Singular.	Plural.
der Acker, the field	— Aecker.
— Bruder, the brother	— Brüder.
— Hammer, the hammer	— Hämmer.
— Schwager, the brother-in-law	— Schwäger.
— Vater, the father	— Väter.

Obs. Also the neuter word das Kloster, the convent, modifies the vowel in plural—die Klöster, the convents.

IV. To the Fourth Declension.

1. The genitive singular often terminates in s, instead of es—this is the case

1. In words the last syllable of which is unaccented, as—

a. In foreign words in or; for example, der Doctor, des Doctors.

b. Usually in words derived by the suffixes and, at, end, icht, ig, ing, ling, rich, sal, thum; for instance, der Heiland, the saviour, des Heilands; der Monat, the month, des Monats; der Abend, the evening, des Abends; das Dickicht, the thicket, des Dickichts; der Häring, the herring, des Härings; der König, the king, des Königs; der Frühling, the spring, des Frühlings; der Gänserich, the gander, des Gänserichs; das Labsal, the refreshment, des Labsals; das Bisthum, the bishopric, des Bisthums.

c. In compounds, as der Kaufmann, the merchant, des Kaufmanns; der Armstuhl, the arm-chair, des Armstuhls.

2. Often in words terminating in a vowel or liquid consonant, as der Klee, the clover, des Klee-s; das Korn, the grain, des Korns; der Flaum, the down, des Flaums.

2. The e in dative singular is generally left out—

a. When the genitive terminates in s, instead of es, as in dem Dickicht, in the thicket; dem Abend, to the evening.

b. When the following word begins with a vowel, as dem Geiz ergeben, given to avarice.

c. In the word Gott, preceded by no article; for example, Gott sei gedankt, God be thanked.

d. In many words, after a preposition without article, as mit Weib und Kind, with wife and child; von Ort zu Ort, from place to place; aus Gold gemacht, made of gold; vor Zorn, with anger.

3. The nominative plural is formed by the termination e in the following cases:

a. In monosyllabic roots, as der Tisch, the table, die Tische; das Pferd, the horse, die Pferde.

b. In derivatives with prefixes ge, be, ent, er, ver, an, &c. and suffixes and, end, icht, ig, ing, ling, rich, niß, sal, as der Gewinn, the gain, die Gewinne; das Gebot, the command, die Gebote; der Befehl, the order, die Befehle; der Vergleich, the contract, die Vergleiche; der König, the king, die Könige.

Obs. 1. The three neuters, das Floß, the raft, das Rohr, the reed, das Chor, the chorus, modify the vowel in plural—die Flöße, die Röhre, die Chöre.

Obs. 2. Words masculine, terminating in plural in e, modify the vowel—for instance, der Schwan, the swan, die Schwäne: except the following—

a. Monosyllabic roots.

Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
der Aal, the eel	die Aale.	der Dom, the cathedral	die Dome.
— Aar, the eagle	— Aare.	— Druck, the print	— Drucke.
— Arm, the arm	— Arme.	— Grad, the degree	— Grade.
— Dachs, the badger	— Dachse.	— Gurt, the girdle	— Gurte.
— Docht, the wick	— Dochte.	— Hag, the hedge	— Hage.
— Dolch, the dagger	— Dolche.		

Singular.	*Plural.*
der Hall, the sound	die Halle.
— Halm, the stalk	— Halme.
— Hauch, the breeze	— Hauche.
— Hort, the shelter	— Horte.
— Huf, the hoof	— Hufe.
— Hund, the dog	— Hunde.
— Karst, the mattock	— Karste.
— Kork, the cork	— Korke.
— Krahn, the crane	— Krahne.
— Lachs, the salmon	— Lachse.
— Lack, the gum-lac	— Lacke.
— Laut, the sound	— Laute.
— Luchs, the lynx	— Luchse.
— Molch, the salamander	— Molche.
— Mord, the murder	— Morde.
— Pfad, the path	— Pfade.

Singular.	*Plural.*
der Pol, the pole	die Pole.
— Puls, the pulse	— Pulse.
— Punkt, the point	— Punkte.
— Quast, the knob	— Quaste.
— Schuh, the shoe	— Schuhe.
— Stahr, the starling	— Stahre.
— Stoff, the matter	— Stoffe.
— Sund, the sound	— Sunde.
— Takt, the time	— Takte.
— Tag, the day	— Tage.
— Talk, the talc	— Talke.
— Thron, the throne	— Throne.
— Torf, the dry turf	— Torfe.
— Trupp, the flock	— Truppe.
— Tusch, the Indian ink	— Tusche.

b. Derivatives.

Singular.	*Plural.*
der Heiland, the saviour	die Heilande.
— Monat, the month	— Monate.
— Abend, the evening	— Abende.
— Leichnam, the corpse	— Leichname.
— Kapaun, the capon	— Kapaune.
— Kompaß, the compass	— Kompasse.
— Küraß, the cuirass	— Kürasse.
— Patron, the patron	— Patrone.
— Salat, the salad	— Salate.
— Tabak, the tobacco	— Tabake.

4. The nominative plural is formed by the termination en or n in the following words:

a. Masculine.

Singular.	Plural.
der Mast, the mast	die Masten.
— Schmerz, the pain	— Schmerzen.
— See, the lake	— Seen.
— Staat, the state	— Staaten.
— Strahl, the ray	— Strahlen.
— Zins, the rent	— Zinsen.
— Lorbeer, the laurel	— Lorbeeren.

b. Neuter.

Singular.	Plural.
das Auge, the eye	die Augen.
— Ende, the end	— Enden.
— Ohr, the ear	— Ohren.
— Weh, the pain	— Wehen.
— Bett, the bed	— Betten.
— Hemd, the shirt	— Hemden.

c. Of foreign origin, as der Consul, die Consuln; das Insect, die Insecten; das Statut, die Statuten; particularly masculine substantives with the unaccented termination or, as der Doctor, die Doctoren.

Obs. If the termination or has the accent, the plural is formed by e, as der Matado'r, die Matadore; das Meteo'r, die Meteore.

5. The nominative plural is formed by the termination er with a modification of the vowel—

a. In neuter monosyllables, as das Blatt, the leaf, die Blätter.

b. In a few neuter derivatives with ge, as das Gesicht, the face; das Gemach, the room; das Gemüth, the mind; das Geschlecht, the race; das Gespenst, the spectre; das Gewand, the garment.

c. In ten masculine words, namely, der Geist, the spirit; der Gott, the god; der Leib, the body; der Mann, the man; der Ort, the spot; der Rand, the brim; der Wald, the wood; der Bösewicht, the miscreant; der Wurm, the worm; der Vormund, the guardian.

d. In derivatives with suffix thum, as das Kaiserthum, the empire; der Irrthum, the error.

e. In a few foreign words, as das Hospital, die Hospitäler; das Regiment, die Regimenter.

§ 4. ON SUBSTANTIVES OF DIFFERENT DECLENSIONS.

1. Many substantives which, with the same form, imply different meanings, follow different declensions

according to those meanings. The whole number of them is contained in the following list.

Singular.	Plural.
das Band, the ribbond	die Bänder.
— Band, the fetter	— Bande.
der Band, the volume	— Bände.
die Bank, the bench	— Bänke.
— Bank, the bank	— Banken.
das Bauer, the cage	— Bauer.
der Bauer, the peasant	— Bauern.
das Ding, the thing	— Dinge.
— Ding, the little thing	— Dinger.
der Dorn, the thorn	— Dornen.
— Dorn, the prickle	— Dörner.
der Fuß, the foot	— Füße.
— Fuß, the foot (measure)	— Fuße.
das Gesicht, the face	— Gesichter.
— Gesicht, the vision	— Gesichte.
das Gift, the poison	— Gifte.
die (Mit)gift, the dowry	— (Mit)giften.
der Halm, the stalk	— Halme, separate stalks. — Halmen, stalks collectively taken.
das Holz, the wood	— Hölzer, pieces of wood. — Holze, different kinds of wood.
das Horn, the horn	— Hörner, the horns of an animal. — Horne, different kinds of horn.
der Kiefer, the jaw	— Kiefer.
die Kiefer, the fir	— Kiefern.
der Laden, the shutter	— die Laden.
— Laden, the shop	— Läden or Laden.

Singular.	Plural.
das Land, the land	die Lande, unknown countries, or provinces. — Länder, political parts of the earth.
das Licht, the light	— Lichte, candles (in reference to their material). — Lichter, *lumina* (in reference to the flame).
das Mahl, the meal	— Mähler.
— Mahl, time	— Mahle (*vices*, Lat.).
der Mann, the man	— Männer. — Mannen, vassals, warriors.
der Mensch, the human being	— Menschen.
das Mensch, the wench	— Menscher.
der Mond, the moon	— Monde.
— Mond (*poet.*), month	— Monden.
der Ort, the place	— Oerter, individual places, villages, &c. — Orte, neighbourhoods.
die Sau, the hog	— Säue, tame sows. — Sauen, wild hogs.
der Schild, the shield	— Schilde.
das Schild, the sign-board	— Schilder.
die Schnur, the thread	— Schnüre.
— Schnur, the daughter-in-law	— Schnuren.
der Sporn, the spur	— Sporne, single spurs. — Spornen or Sporen, a pair of spurs.
der Stachel, the sting	— Stachel, separate stings. — Stacheln, stings collectively taken.

Singular.	Plural.
die Steuer, the tax	die Steuern.
das Steuer, the helm	— Steuer.
der Stift, the pencil	— Stifte.
das Stift, the establishment	— Stifte or Stifter.
der Strauß, the ostrich	— Strauße.
— Strauß, the nosegay	— Sträußer.
das Thal, the valley	— Thäler; (*poet.*) Thale.
das Thor, the gate	— Thore.
der Thor, the fool	— Thoren.
das Tuch, the cloth	— Tücher, individual cloths, as Halstücher, neck-handkerchiefs. — Tuche, kinds of woollen stuffs.
das Wort, the word	— Wörter, words (without connexion, as in a dictionary; *vocabula*, Lat.) — Worte, words in connexion (*verba*, Lat.).
der Zoll, the toll	— Zölle.
— Zoll, the inch	— Zolle.

2. A few substantives have two different forms in plural, which are indiscriminately used, without any difference in the signification, as—

Singular.	Plural.
der Boden, the bottom	die Böden or Boden.
das Boot, boat	— Böte or Boote.
— Denkmahl, the monument	— Denkmahle or Denkmähler.
— Faden, thread	— Faden or Fäden.
— Gau, district	— Gaue or Gauen.
— Gewand, the garment (*poet.*)	— Gewande or Gewänder.

Singular.	Plural.
der Pfau, the peacock	die Pfaue or Pfauen.
der Psalm, the psalm	— Psalme or Psalmen.
das Scheit, the log	— Scheite or Scheiter.
der Schöps, the wether	— Schöpse or Schöpsen.
— Strauch, the shrub	— Sträuche or Sträucher.
das Stück, the piece	— Stücke, but in Stücken gehen, to go to pieces.

Obs. 1. The compounds of the word Mann, man, form their plural either by Männer, men, or Leute, people. The first takes place, when the notion of sex, of moral dignity, or high station, is to be expressed, as der Tochtermann, the daughter's husband, die Tochtermänner; der Biedermann—der Ehrenmann, the man of honour, die Biedermänner—die Ehrenmänner; der Staatsmann, the statesman, die Staatsmänner. But when the plural merely implies a collective number of the persons described, then it is formed by Leute, as der Arbeitsmann, the labourer, die Arbeitsleute; der Landmann, the countryman, die Landleute; der Fuhrmann, the coachman, die Fuhrleute.

Obs. 2. Most of those words, which in the English language are used only in the singular number, have the same restriction in the German; but some substantives, which have a regular plural form in English, form their plural in German either by similar derivatives or compounds, as—

Singular.	Plural.
der Betrug, the deception	die Betrügereien.
— Dank, the thanks	— Danksagungen.
das Glück, the success	— Glücksfälle.
die Gunst, the favour	— Gunstbezeugungen.
der Kummer, the grief	— Kümmernisse.
das Lob, the praise	— Lobeserhebungen.
der Lohn, the reward	— Belohnungen.
die Pein, the pain	— Peinlichkeiten and Peinigungen.
der Rath, the advice	— Berathungen and Rathschlagungen.

Singular.	Plural.
der Raub, the robbery	die Räubereien.
— Rausch, the intoxication	— Berauschungen.
— Schmuck, the ornament	— Zierden or Zierathen.
— Streit, the dispute	— Streitigkeiten.
— Tadel, the blame	— Tadelreden.
— Tausch, the exchange	— Tauschverträge.
— Verdacht, the suspicion	— Verdächtigkeiten or Verdächtigungen.
— Verdruß, the annoyance	— Verdrießlichkeiten.
— Zank, the quarrel	— Zänkereien.

Obs. 3. Many substantives are only used in the plural number; the most common are—

die Briefschaften, the letters.
— Alpen, the Alps.
— Ahnen, the ancestors.
— Einkünfte, the income (*sing.* das Einkommen).
— Aeltern, the parents.
— Kosten or Unkosten, the expences.
— Gebrüder, the brothers.
— Leute, the people.
— Gefälle, the rents.
die Gliedmaßen, the limbs.
— Kaldaunen, the guts.
— Masern or Rötheln, the measles.
— Molken, the whey.
— Pocken, the small-pox.
— Sporteln, the perquisites.
— Trümmer, the ruins.
— Zeitläufte, the junctures.
— Fasten, Lent.
— Ferien, the vacations.

Obs. Ostern, Easter, Weihnachten, Christmas, Pfingsten, Whitsuntide, are plurals when used with an article; but without they are considered as singulars, as Ostern ist nicht fern, Easter is not far off.

§ 5. ON THE DECLENSION OF PROPER NOUNS.

I. Of Names of Things.

1. Names of things which require the definite article, as names of rivers, lakes, mountains, forests, countries (masc. and fem.), and nations, follow the declension of common names, as der Rhein, the Rhine—G. des Rheines, D. dem Rheine, A. den Rhein; die

Donau, the Danube, G. and D. der Donau, A. die Donau.

2. Those which do not want the article, as names of places and lands (neut.), are declined in the following way—

a. Names of lands and places (neut.), not terminating in s, x, z, have in genitive the termination s; the other cases remain unchanged, as die Städte Deutschlands, the cities of Germany; die Häuser Londons, the houses of London.

b. Those names which terminate in s, x, z, can have no genitive, it therefore must be expressed by the preposition von, of, or by the preceding genitive of the common name, as die Einwohner von Syracus, the inhabitants of Syracuse, or die Einwohner der Stadt Syracus, the inhabitants of the town of Syracuse.

II. Of Names of Persons.

1. These remain unchanged in singular when preceded by the article; for instance, der Karl, des Karl, &c.; but when following no article, they have in genitive an s, as Karls, of Charles; Adelheids, of Adelheid. If the masculine name ends in nominative with a hissing sound, it takes in genitive ens; and if the feminine name terminates in nominative in e, it takes in genitive ns, as Felix-ens, of Felix; Julie-ns, of Julia.

Obs. When the name of the family, together with the individual name, stand in the genitive, only the first takes the termination, as Friedrich von Schillers Werke, the works of Frederick von Schiller.

2. In plural the termination of the nominative is e in German names, and in foreign ones ending with

on and am, as Ludwig, Louis, die Ludwige; Conon, die Conone; it is ne or nen when the names end in o, as Otto, die Ottonen; Cicero, die Cicerone.

CHAP. III. ON ADJECTIVES.

§ 1. ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives are not declined when they form the predicate in a sentence, as der Himmel ist blau, the sky is blue; die Mutter ist freundlich, the mother is kind.

2. Adjectives, when they stand as epithets to a substantive, follow three different declensions, in all of which the nominative and accusative are alike in the singular feminine and neuter.

3. The following table gives a view of the three adjective declensions:—

I. WITHOUT ARTICLE.	II. WITH DEFIN. ARTICLE.	III. WITH INDEFIN. ARTICLE.
Declined like definite article.	Nom. Sing. e.	*m. f. n.* Nom. Sing. er e es.
	en in other cases.	

4. Expressed in words, this table says:—1. adjectives preceded by no article are declined like the definite article; 2. adjectives, when following the definite article, have in nominative singular the termination e, in the other cases en; and, 3. when following the indefinite article, the nominative singular for the masculine terminates in er, the feminine in e, the neuter in es, and the other cases in en, (not, however, to forget the rule given in 2, that nominative and accusative singular feminine and neuter are always alike).

5. Examples for the three declensions of adjectives.

I. For the First Declension.

Singular.

MAS.—N. guter Wein, good wine.
G. guteš Weines, of good wine.
D. gutem Weine, to good wine.
A. guten Wein, good wine.

Plural.

N. gute Weine, good wines.
G. guter Weine, of good wines.
D. guten Weinen, to good wines.
A. gute Weine, good wines.

Singular.

FEM.—N. große Freude, great joy.
G. großer Freude, of great joy.
D. großer Freude, to great joy.
A. große Freude, great joy.

Plural.

N. große Freuden, great joys.
G. großer Freuden, of great joys.
D. großen Freuden, to great joys.
A. große Freuden, great joys.

Singular.

NEUT.—N. schönes Pferd, fine horse.
G. schönes Pferdes, of fine horse.
D. schönem Pferde, to fine horse.
A. schönes Pferde, fine horse.

Plural.

N. schöne Pferde, fine horses.
G. schöner Pferde, of fine horses.
D. schönen Pferden, to fine horses.
A. schöne Pferde, fine horses.

II. For the Second Declension.

Singular.

MAS.—N. der weiſe Mann, the wise man.
G. des weiſen Mannes, of the wise man.
D. dem weiſen Manne, to the wise man.
A. den weiſen Mann, the wise man.

Plural.

N. die weiſen Männer, the wise men.
G. der weiſen Männer, of the wise men.
D. den weiſen Männern, to the wise men.
A. die weiſen Männer, the wise men.

Singular.

FEM.—N. die gute Frau, the good woman.
G. der guten Frau, of the good woman.
D. der guten Frau, to the good woman.
A. die gute Frau, the good woman.

Plural.

N. die guten Frauen, the good women.
G. der guten Frauen, of the good women.
D. den guten Frauen, to the good women.
A. die guten Frauen, the good women.

Singular.

NEUT.—N. das neue Haus, the new house.
G. des neuen Hauſes, of the new house.
D. dem neuen Hauſe, to the new house.
A. das neue Haus, the new house.

Plural.

N. die neuen Häuſer, the new houses.
G. der neuen Häuſer, of the new houses.
D. den neuen Häuſern, to the new houses.
A. die neuen Häuſer, the new houses.

III. For the Third Declension.

MAS.—N. ein treuer Freund, a true friend.
G. eines treuen Freundes, of a true friend.
D. einem treuen Freunde, to a true friend.
A. einen treuen Freund, a true friend.

FEM.—N. eine schöne Blume, a beautiful flower.
G. einer schönen Blume, of a beautiful flower.
D. einer schönen Blume, to a beautiful flower.
A. eine schöne Blume, a beautiful flower.

NEUT.—N. ein kleines Kind, a little child.
G. eines kleinen Kindes, of a little child.
D. einem kleinen Kinde, to a little child.
A. ein kleines Kind, a little child.

OBSERVATIONS.

I. To the First Declension.

1. Adjectives are thus declined, when a qualifying word without termination of gender and declension precedes, as etwas, something; genug, enough; allerlei, all kinds of; vielerlei, of many sorts; dergleichen, such like; lauter, pure; viel, much; wenig, little; mehr, more—and indeclinable numbers, as vier, fünf, sechs; for instance:

Singular.

N. etwas guter Wein, some good wine.
G. etwas guteſ Weines, of some good wine.
D. etwas gutem Weine, to some good wine.
A. etwas guten Wein, some good wine.

Plural.

N. lauter gute Weine, mere good wines.
G. lauter guter Weine, of mere good wines.
D. lauter guten Weinen, to mere good wines.
A. lauter gute Weine, mere good wines.

In the same way are declined—genug schlechtes Bier, enough bad beer; allerlei neues Geld, all sorts of new coin; dergleichen frische Butter, such like fresh butter; viel neues Korn, much new grain; wenig gutes Wasser, little good water.

2. The genitive singular in masculine and neuter often terminates in en instead of es, as fröhlichen Herzens, of joyful heart; leichten Kaufes, of light bargain; hiesigen Ortes, of this place; großen Theils, in great measure.

3. The nominative plural may end in en, instead of e,

after the addressed person of the personal pronoun, as Ihr guten Leute, you good people.

II. To the Second Declension.

1. Adjectives are declined in this manner when construed —*a.* with the pronouns dieser, this; jener, that; jeder, every; solcher, such; welcher, which: and, *b.* with general numbers, as aller, all; etlicher and einiger, some; verschiedener, several; mancher, many a; vieler, much; weniger, little; and the words—folgender, following; erwähnter, mentioned; obiger, above mentioned, &c.

2. The nominative and accusative plural may end in e instead of en, after einige, etliche, mehrere, manche, viele, alle, verschiedene, as alle gute Geister, all good spirits; verschiedene fremde Gäste, several strange guests.

3. Adjectives derived from names of places by the termination er are not declined, as auf der Lüneburger Heide, on the heath of Luneburg; die Hamburger Börse, the exchange of Hambro'; in der Prager Schlacht, in the battle of Prague; auf dem Wiener Congresse, in the congress of Vienna.

4. If two or more adjectives are added, without an article, to a substantive, they are all declined according to the first declension, when they refer in an equal degree to the substantive; for instance, mit vielem, herzlichem Vergnügen, with great, hearty pleasure; in langer, schwerer Krankheit, in long, severe illness. Only the genitives of all terminate in en, as ein Glas starken, guten Weines, a glass of strong, good wine. But if the adjectives next to the substantive are imagined to stand in a closer relation to it than the first, in this case the first adjective follows the first declension, the others the second; for instance, guter, alte französische Wein, good old French wine; mit starkem, weißen Baierischen Biere, with strong white Bavarian beer; in erster, frischen, blühenden Jugend, in first fresh blooming youth.

III. To the Third Declension.

Adjectives are thus declined when preceded by the pronouns possessive mein, dein, &c., and the word kein, no; for instance, in plural—

N. keine neuen Freunde, no new friends.
G. keiner neuen Freunde, of no new friends.
D. keinen neuen Freunden, to no new friends.
A. keine neuen Freunde, no new friends.

§ 2. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adjectives, when used as substantives, retain their original declension—*i.e.* with the indefinite article they follow the third declension: but, when preceded by the definite article, they have terminations according to the second, as ein Bedienter, a servant, but der Bediente, the servant; ein Ganzes, a whole, das Ganze, the whole: and when standing without any article, they follow the first declension, as Bekannte, acquaintances; Verwandte, relations.

2. Adjectives derived from names of countries are, of course, declined according to the given rules, as der Holländische Häring, the Dutch herring; die Englische Flotte, the English fleet; ein Französisches Heer, a French army. But names of individuals belonging to a certain country, and derived from the name of that country, follow the declension of substantives, as der (ein) Italiener, the (an) Italian; die (eine) Italienerinn, the (an) Italian lady: der (ein) Engländer, the (an) Englishman; die (eine) Engländerinn, the (an) English lady: der (ein) Spanier, the (a) Spaniard; die (eine) Spanierinn, the (a) Spanish lady: der (ein) Franzose, the (a) Frenchman; die (eine) Französinn, the (a) French lady:—thus also, der (ein) Türke, die (eine) Türkinn, the (a) Turk; der (ein) Schwede, die (eine) Schwedinn, the (a) Swede; der (ein) Asiate, die (eine) Asiatinn, the (an) inhabitant of Asia; der (ein) Orientale, die (eine) Orientalinn, the (an) inhabitant of the Orient. The only exception to this rule is Deutsch, German,

which is both an adjective and the name of the inhabitants, declined like an adjective, as der Deutſche Dichter, the German poet; die Deutſche Sprache, the German language; ein Deutſches Buch, a German book; and also der Deutſche, die Deutſche, the inhabitant of Germany; ein Deutſcher, eine Deutſche, an inhabitant of Germany.

3. In popular language, and in poetry, the undeclined form of the adjective is frequently used with nouns of the neuter gender, as gut Glück, good success. This, however, can only take place in the nominative and accusative singular, when no article, or when the indefinite article, precedes, as ein gut Glas Wein, a glass of good wine; ein groß Glück, a great piece of good fortune; wir haben ſchön Wetter, we have fine weather; instead of ein gutes Glas Wein, ein großes Glück, wir haben ſchönes Wetter.

4. Some German adjectives admit of no declension; for instance, the word allerhand, and those which are compounded with halb or the syllable lei, as allerhand Bücher, various sorts of books; anderthalb Guineen, a guinea and a half; zweierlei Dinge, two different things.

5. Ganz and halb, whole, half, before names of countries and cities, when they are used without an article, are not to be declined; for instance, ganz England, all England; halb Berlin, half of Berlin; but with a definite article it is said—das ganze England, the whole of England; das halbe Berlin, the half of Berlin.

6. The adjective, as an epithet, often stands after its substantive, particularly in poetry; it is then not declined, as ein Mädchen ſchön und wunderbar, a maiden beautiful and marvellous; meine Mutter ſelig, my deceased mother.

7. The words viel, mehr, wenig, when used as adjectives, often do not change their form by terminations of declension, as viel Geld, much money; wenig Menſchen, few people; mit mehr Glück, with more success. The same is the case with the word all before pronouns possessive and demonstrative; for instance, all mein Thun, all my exertion; all

dieser Reichthum, all these riches; mit all dem Gelde, with all that money; von all jenen Freunden, from all those friends.

8. Adjective names of colours, as schwarz, black; violett, violet; grün, green, when expressing the essence of the colours themselves, without reference to things coloured by them, are indeclinable; for example, das Schwarz, the black colour; das Grün, the green colour: but das Schwarze means the black coloured substance, as das Schwarze in der Scheibe treffen, to hit the black mark in the target; das schwarze Kleid, the black dress; ein schwarzes Kleid, a black dress.

§ 3. ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The manner of expressing the degrees of comparison in German is nearly the same as in English. The positive is the simple adjective; by adding the syllable er the comparative is formed; and the termination st makes the superlative; as kühn, bold; kühner, bolder; kühnst, boldest.

2. This is invariably done, though the positive should consist of three or more syllables, as gehorsam, obedient; gehorsam er, more obedient; gehorsam st, most obedient; un=be=greif=lich, inconceivable; unbe=greiflich=er, more inconceivable; unbegreiflich=st, most inconceivable.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Before the superlative-termination st, an e is inserted when the adjective ends with a lingual or hissing consonant, as d, t, s, sch, ß, or a vowel; for instance, wild, wild, wild e st; berühmt, celebrated, berühmt e st; dreist, audacious, dreist e st; kraus, intricate, kraus e st; süß, sweet, süß e st; falsch, false, falsch e st; neu, new, neu e st, newest. However, adjectives and participles in end and et form their superlative

merely by ſt, for the sake of euphony; for instance, elend, miserable, elendſt; reizend, charming, reizendſt; gebildet, well-educated, gebildetſt.

2. The superlative form of adjectives in iſch is avoided, and therefore, as in English, expressed by words like *most*, *highly*, *exceedingly*, beſonders, höchſt, äußerſt; for instance, höchſt bäueriſch, highly boorish; äußerſt knechtiſch, exceedingly slavish.

3. Several adjectives derived from prepositions have the form of a comparative, but the signification of a positive, as ober, upper; unter, under; inner, inner; äußer, outer; vorder, fore; hinter, hind; nieder, nether; mittler, middle; these form their superlative by adding ſt to the comparative, as unterſt, innerſt, äußerſt, vorderſt, hinterſt, niederſt. Only the superlative of mittler is made from the preposition-root mittel, and sounds mittelſt, instead of mittlerſt.

4. The vowels a, o, u, in radical syllables of the positive degree, are modified in the other degrees, as alt, old; älter, older; älteſt, oldest: klug, prudent; klüger, more prudent; klügſt, most prudent: roth, red; röther, redder; rötheſt, reddest.

Exceptions.—The following adjectives are excepted, and do not modify the vowel:—

a. All of more than one syllable, as mager, lean; offen, open; fade, insipid; muthig, courageous.

b. The following forty-one monosyllables:

barſch, harsh.
blank, polished.
blaß, pale.
brav, brave.
bunt, coloured.
dumpf, hollow.
fahl, } fallow.
falb, }
falſch, false.
flach, flat.
froh, merry.
hohl, hollow.
hold, graceful.
kahl, bald.
karg, sparing.
knapp, tight.
lahm, lame.
loß, loose.
matt, faint.
morſch, decayed.
nackt, naked.
platt, plain.
plump, heavy.
raſch, rash.
roh, rude.
rund, round.
ſacht, stout.
ſanft, soft.
ſatt, satisfied.
ſchlank, slender.
ſchroff, rugged.
ſtarr, stiff.
ſtolz, proud.
ſtraff, strained.
ſtumm, dumb.
ſtumpf, blunt.
toll, mad.
voll, full.
wahr, true.
wund, sore.
zahm, tame.

5. Erſt and letzt, first and last, are superlatives in form, but positives according to meaning; a comparative is formed of them by the termination er, erſter, and letzter, which are used, either with or without the definite article, to point to two foregoing things, so that erſter, the former, refers to the first mentioned, and letzter, the latter, to the last mentioned; for instance, er erzählte mir zwei Neuigkeiten; die erſtere iſt unwahrſcheinlich, die letztere unglaublich, he told me of two new occurrences; the first is improbable, the second incredible.

6. *On the Declension of the Comparative and Superlative.*

The comparative, as well as the superlative, are declined in the same way as the positive, and follow exactly the same rules in every respect. For instance—

a. Without article:

Masculine.

Pos.	ſchöner Baum, beautiful tree.
Comp.	ſchönerer Baum, more beautiful tree.
Superl.	ſchönſter Baum, most beautiful tree.

Feminine.

Pos.	harte Schale, hard husk.
Comp.	härtere Schale, harder husk.
Superl.	härteſte Schale, hardest husk.

Neuter.

Pos.	ſcharfes Meſſer, sharp knife.
Comp.	ſchärferes Meſſer, sharper knife.
Superl.	ſchärfſtes Meſſer, sharpest knife.

b. With definite article:

Masculine.

Pos.	der ſtarke Mann, the strong man.
Comp.	der ſtärkere Mann, the stronger man.
Superl.	der ſtärkſte Mann, the strongest man.

Feminine.

Pos.	die dunkle Roſe, the dark rose.
Comp.	die dunklere Roſe, the darker rose.
Superl.	die dunkelſte Roſe, the darkest rose.

Neuter.

Pos.	das wilde Pferd, the wild horse.
Comp.	das wildere Pferd, the wilder horse.
Superl.	das wildeste Pferd, the wildest horse.

c. With indefinite article, or with pronouns possessive :

Masculine.

Pos.	ein kluger Bruder, a clever brother.
Comp.	ein klügerer Bruder, a cleverer brother.
Superl.	mein klügster Bruder, my cleverest brother.

Feminine.

Pos.	eine breite Straße, a broad street.
Comp.	eine breitere Straße, a broader street.
Superl.	unsre breiteste Straße, our broadest street.

Neuter.

Pos.	ein neues Haus, a new house.
Comp.	ein neueres Haus, a newer house.
Superl.	ihr neuestes Haus, her newest house.

7. Some comparatives are formed in a peculiar way, namely :

1. Gut, good ; besser, better ; best, best.

2. Hoch loses the c before h, whenever in its declension and comparison an e follows ; therefore, der hohe, the high ; höher, higher ; but, höchst, highest.

3. Nahe, near, derived from the preposition nach, follows the same rule as hoch ; therefore, näher, nearer ; nächst, nearest.

4. Viel, much ; mehr, more ; meist (or mehrst), most.

5. Wenig, little ; weniger or minder, less ; wenigst or mindest, least.

6. Groß, great ; größer, greater ; größt (instead of größ-est), greatest.

8. There are some adjectives which can only occur as predicates in a sentence, and never as epithets before nouns, for instance, feind, hostile ; it can be said—der Mann ist mir feind, the man is hostile towards me ; but not der feinde Mann. All these adjectives have, besides, no terminations

for the comparative and superlative, which must be expressed by the adverbs mehr and am meiſten, more, and most, —as mehr feindlich, more hostile; am meiſten feindlich, most hostile. Such adjectives are:—

angſt, anxious.
brach, fallow.
feind, hostile.
gång und gebe, current.
gram, averse.
irre, puzzled.
kund, known.
leid, sorry.
noth, necessary.
nütz, useful.
quer, across.
quitt, quits.

And the derivatives:

abhold, disaffected.
abſpenſtig, disinclined.
anheiſchig, pledged.
anſichtig, getting sight.
ausfindig, what can be found.
eingedenk, mindful.
getroſt, confident.
gewahr, aware.
habhaft, capable of seizing.
handgemein, engaged in a scuffle.
theilhaft, sharing.
unpaß, indisposed.
verluſtig, forfeiting.

CHAP. IV. ON NUMBERS.

§ 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

eins, one.
zwei, two.
drei, three.
vier, four.
fünf, five.
ſechs, six.
ſieben, seven.
acht, eight.
neun, nine.
zehn, ten.
eilf, elf, eleven.
zwölf, twelve.
dreizehn, thirteen.
vierzehn, fourteen.
funfzehn, fifteen.
ſechzehn, sixteen.
ſiebzehn, seventeen.
achtzehn, eighteen.
neunzehn, nineteen.
zwanzig, twenty.
ein und zwanzig, twenty-one.
zwei und zwanzig, twenty-two.
drei und zwanzig, twenty-three.
vier und zwanzig, twenty-four.

funf und zwanzig, twenty-five.
sechs und zwanzig, twenty-six.
sieben und zwanzig, twenty-seven.
acht und zwanzig, twenty-eight.
neun und zwanzig, twenty-nine.
dreißig, thirty.
ein und dreißig, thirty-one.
zwei und dreißig, u.s.w., thirty-two, &c.
vierzig, forty.
funfzig, fifty.
sechzig, sixty.
siebzig, seventy.
achtzig, eighty.
neunzig, ninety.
hundert, a hundred.
hundert und eins, hundred and one.
hundert und zwei, u.s.w., hundred and two, &c.
zwei hundert, two hundred.
drei hundert, three hundred.
vier hundert, four hundred.
fünf hundert, five hundred.
sechs hundert, six hundred.
sieben hundert, seven hundred.
acht hundert, eight hundred.
neun hundert, nine hundred.
tausend, a thousand.
zwei tausend, u.s.w., two thousand, &c.
zehn tausend, ten thousand.
hundert tausend, a hundred thousand.
eine Million, one million.
ein tausend acht hundert und neun und dreißig, one thousand eight hundred and thirty-nine.

§ 2. ON THE DECLENSION OF CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1. *Of the number one.* The number *one*, in German, is either—

A. Not declined: and its form is then—

1. Eins, when no substantive nor any number follows, as eins, zwei, drei, &c. one, two, three; einmal eins ist eins, one time one is one: and

2. Ein, when preceding another number, as ein und zwanzig, one and twenty; ein hundert, one hundred.

B. It is declined: this takes place in all other instances, and its declension is like—

1. The indefinite article ein, eine, ein, when it is standing before a substantive, as ein Mann, one man; eine Frau, one woman; ein Kind, one child: or like

2. An adjective—

a. After the first form of declension, when accompanied by no article and followed by no substantive, as Waren viele Männer (*m.*), Frauen (*f.*), Kinder (*n.*), da? Were there many men, women, children? Nicht einer, nicht eine, nicht eines, not one.

b. After the second form, when preceded by the definite article, as der eine, die eine, das eine, the one.

c. After the third form, when accompanied by a pronoun possessive, as mein einer Sohn, my one son; meine eine Tochter, my one daughter; mein eines Kind, my one child.

2. Zwei and drei, two and three, have in genitive the termination er when no article precedes, as der Vater zwei er Söhne, the father of two sons; der Lehrer drei er Kinder, the master of three children; mittels zwei er Zeugen, by means of two witnesses; statt drei er Freunde, instead of three friends. In dative they take the termination en, when no article precedes nor any substantive follows, as ich habe es mit zwei en zu thun, I have to do it with two; ich mußte drei en folgen, I was obliged to follow three.

3. All other numbers are indeclinable: they have only en in dative (like zwei and drei) when no article precedes, nor any substantive follows, as mit sechs en fahren, to ride in a carriage with six horses; Affen gehen oft auf Vier en, monkeys often go on four legs; es mit Zwanzig en aufnehmen, to engage with twenty.

Obs. In some cases, numbers have in nominative and in accusative the termination e, when a certain substantive is understood, as alle neune treffen, to hit all "nine-pins;" alle fünfe or zehne, all five *or* ten "fingers."

§ 3. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. In all compound numbers the unit is constantly before the *ten*, we cannot say *twenty-five* or *five and twenty;* we are confined to the latter, which is fünf und zwanzig.

2. The English "*the two*" is in German die zwei: and "*both*," when two things belong naturally together, or are already known, is die beiden or beide; for instance, er ist auf beiden Ohren taub, he is deaf in both his ears; die beiden Familien, welche hier wohnten, werden morgen abreisen, the two families, which were living here, will depart to-morrow. If "*both*" implies two lifeless things, it is beides, declined like the definite article, as er will beides, he wants both; wir sprachen von beidem, we spoke of both things.

3. As names of ciphers, the German numbers are of the feminine gender, and declined as such; for instance, die Null, zero, *pl.* die Nullen; die Eins, the one, *pl.* die Einsen; die Neunen sind schlecht geschrieben, the nines are badly written.

4. Hundert and tausend, as collective names, are neuter, with plural termination e, as ein halbes Hundert Nüsse, half a hundred of nuts; mehrere Tausende, several thousands; zu Hunderten kommen, to come by hundreds.

5. The names of decades are formed from the cardinal numbers by the termination er, with the masculine gender, as der Einer, the unit; der Zehner, the order of ten, *pl.* die Zehner, the tens; der Hunderter, the order of hundred.

6. Other substantives, formed from numbers by the same termination er, have received various meanings; thus der Vierziger, Funfziger, Achtziger, signifies the man of forty, fifty, eighty years; der Elfer, der Zwanziger, u.s.w., means wines of the years 1811, 1820, &c.; and der Zweier, Dreier, Sechser, are names for coins of double, treble, and six times

the value of the original small coin, namely, the twopence, the threepence, the sixpence.

7. By putting je (*i. e.* always) before cardinal numbers, they are made distributive, as sie gingen je vier in einer Reihe, they went four and four in a line; sie erhielten je einer zehn Thaler, they received each ten dollars.

8. There are some substantives of the neuter gender which, besides the above mentioned, express numbers, as das Zehend, the decade; das Dutzend, the dozen; das Mandel, fifteen; das Schock, three score.

9. The signification of the word ein Paar is, in German, not so confined as the word *pair* is in English. It signifies both *a pair*, *a couple*, and *a few*, as ein Paar Handschuhe, a pair of gloves; zwei Paar Enten, two couples of ducks; ein Paar Tropfen, a few drops.

10. To denote kinds or sorts, the indeclinable lei (originally meaning *manner*) is added to the genitive of the cardinal number in er, as einerlei, of the same sort; zweierlei, of two different kinds; dreierlei, of three different sorts; hunderterlei, of hundred sorts. Hence it is said: das ist mir einerlei, that is all the same to me, I do not care. Thus are also formed the indeclinable keinerlei, of no kind; allerlei, of all sorts; mancherlei, of various sorts; vielerlei and mehrerlei, of many sorts.

11. To express multiplying, as is done in English with *fold*, the words fach (partition, shelf) or fältig (folded) are attached to cardinal numbers, as einfach, single; einfältig, simple: zwei- or zwie-fach, and zwei- or zwiefältig, double, twofold; dreifach and dreifältig, treble, triple, or threefold. They are all declined like adjectives. Thus are, also, formed vielfach and mehrfach, of many kinds; and of mannig (the original form of manch), mannigfach or mannigfaltig (not mannigfältig), of various sorts.

12. Numbers expressing repetition or multiplication, such as once, twice, three times, &c., are rendered by the cardinal number with the addition of the word mal (time).

Thus it is said: einmal, once; zweimal, twice; hundertmal, a hundred times. And the same word is likewise used in composition with various pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs, as diesesmal, this time; vorigesmal, the time before; oftmal, oftentimes; manchmal, sometimes. However, instead of keinmal, vielmal, and mehrmal, is preferred niemals, never; vielmals, often; mehrmals, several times. If mal is used as a substantive, it is separately written, as ein Mal, one time; jedes Mal, each time; zu verschiedenen Malen, at different times; das erste Mal, the first time.

13. This mal is employed in multiplication, sechsmal acht ist acht und vierzig, six times eight is forty-eight; the multiplication table itself is called in German das Einmaleins; mal also forms adjectives with the addition of the syllable ig—einmalig, what is done once; zweimalig, what is done twice; oftmalig, what is done frequently.

§ 4. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

der erste, die erste, das erste, the first.
— zweite, the second.
— dritte, the third.
— vierte, the fourth.
— fünfte, the fifth.
— sechste, the sixth.
— siebente, the seventh.
— achte, the eighth.
— neunte, the ninth.
— zehnte, the tenth.
— elfte, the eleventh.
— zwölfte, the twelfth.
— dreizehnte, the thirteenth.
— vierzehnte, the fourteenth.
der funfzehnte, the fifteenth.
— sechzehnte, the sixteenth.
— siebzehnte, the seventeenth.
— achtzehnte, the eighteenth.
— neunzehnte, the nineteenth.
— zwanzigste, the twentieth.
— ein und zwanzigste, u. s. w., the twenty-first, &c.
— dreißigste, the thirtieth.
— vierzigste, the fortieth.
— funfzigste, the fiftieth.
— sechzigste, the sixtieth.
— siebzigste, the seventieth.

der achtzigste, the eightieth.
— neunzigste, the ninetieth.
der hundertste, the hundredth.
— tausendste, the thousandth.

§ 5. OBSERVATIONS.

1. Ordinal numbers are formed from the cardinal ones by adding te; and from twenty, zwanzig, onwards, by adding ste; as der zweite, the second, &c. They are declined like adjectives.

Exceptions.—Der erste, the first, is made from an old superlative, erst, which means *earliest;* and der dritte, the third, is formed from drei by shortening the vowel and doubling the t.

2. The *second* is der zweite, and whenever there are only two objects alluded to, der andere. It may be used substantively—Einer sagt ja, der Andere nein, one says yes, the other no; ein Anderes ist versprechen, ein Anderes halten, it is one thing to promise, to perform is another thing; nun zu Etwas Anderem, now to something else.

3. In compound numbers the last only is stated as an ordinal, exactly like in English, as the 1849th year, das ein tausend acht hundert und neun und vierzigste Jahr.

4. From these ordinal numbers words are formed by prefixing selb, self, as selbander, myself the second; selbdritte, myself the third, &c. They are abbreviations of—selbst der andere, selbst der dritte, u.s.w. This way of speaking corresponds to the Greek, ἦν στρατηγὸς δέκατος αὐτός, er war selbzehnter Feldherr, he was himself the tenth general, and it is understood that there were nine others

5. Fractional numbers, as das Drittel, the third part, das Viertel, the quarter, are formed from the ordinals by the addition of Theil, *n.* part. But the fractional part *half* is expressed by the adjective halb or einhalb, and *the half* by the substantive die Hälfte; thus, three twentieths, drei zwanzigstel; twenty-one hundredths, ein und zwanzig hundertstel;

one and one-third, ein und ein Drittel; three and one-half, drei und ein halb.

6. The fractional part halb, half, is always used, for the hour, in connexion with the number next to that mentioned in English; for instance, instead of half-past three, it is said—halb vier (*i. e.* half way towards four o'clock); halb zehn (half way towards ten o'clock), is therefore in English half-past nine; halb eins, half-past twelve; halb zwei, half-past one, &c.

In the same way, instead of *one and a half*, it is said—*the second* (or *other*) *half*, understood that *one* is *whole* and *the other* only *half*, andert halb (the t is inserted for the sake of euphony); thus, two and a half is dritthalb (understood two whole, and the third half); ten and a half, elfthalb, u.s.w.

7. To express the quarters of an hour with the word Viertel above mentioned, reference is again made to the next hour, with the preposition auf; for instance, a quarter past three is, in German, ein Viertel auf vier (*i. e.* one quarter of the way towards four o'clock); hence, ein Viertel auf zehn, is a quarter past nine; ein Viertel auf eins, a quarter past twelve, &c.: and drei Viertel auf eins (*i. e.* three-quarters of the way towards one o'clock), is therefore in English a quarter to one; drei Viertel auf acht, a quarter to eight, &c.

§ 6. INDEFINITE NUMBERS.

I. Of Totality.

1. Aller, alle, alles, all, is declined like an adjective without article, as alle gute Menschen, all good men; er gewann die Herzen aller, he won the hearts of all. The neuter singular is also employed as a substantive implying things and persons, as die Feinde nahmen mir Alles, the enemy took every thing from me; mir folgt der Fluch, und alles flieht mich, the curse follows me, and all fly from me.

Obs. 1. Before a pronoun aller, alle, alles, is shortened into

all, as all dieser Wein, all this wine; all sein Geld, all his money. This All, as a substantive, is neuter, and means the universe (instead of Weltall).

Obs. 2. Aller, alle, alles, all, means a totality which implies that not one individual is missing in a number, as alle Menschen sind sterblich, all men are mortal. It is to be distinguished from ganz, whole, which means that not one particle is missing in an entire thing; for instance, er las das ganze Buch, he read the whole book. Therefore, der ganze Tag, is in English the whole *or* all the day; but, alle Tage means every day (cf. *omnis* and *totus* in Latin).

2. Sämmtlich, all together, generally used only in plural, is preceded either by no article, or by the definite one, as Sämmtliche Anwesende or die sämmtlichen Anwesenden, all those present.

3. Gesammt, collectively joined, is always accompanied by the definite article, as die gesammte Familie, the entire family; der gesammte Nachlaß, the entire legacy.

4. Jeder, jede, jedes, each, every. To express every one, the indefinite article is prefixed, as ein jeder, eine jede, ein jedes. The latter cannot be joined with a substantive, whilst the former may be used either with or without one, as wir irren allesammt, nur jeder (or jeder Mensch) irret anders, we err altogether, but each in a different way; ein jeder kann es wissen, all may know it.

Obs. 1. The same meaning as jeder have the two antiquated words jedweder, jedwede, jedwedes, and jeglicher, jegliche, jegliches.

Obs. 2. Jedermann, every body, any one, is a compound of jeder, but only its second part is declined, as es ist nicht Jedermanns Sache, it is not every body's business; in Jedermanns Munde sein, to be the talk of every body.

5. Kein, keine, kein, no, before a substantive; and absolutely, keiner, keine, keines, none: as er hat kein Geld, he has no money; sie hat keine Brüder, she has no brothers; geben Sie mir Geld, give me some money; ich habe keines, I have none; keiner traut dem Andern, no one trusts another; keiner von uns, none of us; keiner von beiden, neither, not one, of the two; mancher sieht Gefahren, wo keine sind, many a one sees dangers where there are none. Einer and keiner are sometimes used instead of jemand, some one, and niemand, no one; for instance, ich kenne einen in dieser Stadt, I know some one in this town.

II. Of Plurality.

1. Einiger, einige, einiges, some, as sein Sohn hat ihm einigen Kummer gemacht, his son has caused him some grief; einige Zeit nachher, some time after. Usually it is employed in the plural either with or without substantives, as ich habe einige Freunde in Deutschland, I have some friends in Germany; einige behaupten, some people maintain. In this sense the word verschieden, different, is often used, as verschiedene Leute haben es berichtet, several people have reported it.

2. Etliche, a few, some, is rarely used, and then only in the plural; etliche Tage blieb ich bei ihm, I stopped some days with him; etlichemal, a few times.

3. Mancher, manche, manches, many a, in plural manche, several; ich habe es von manchem Soldaten gehört, I have heard it from many a soldier; manche werden sich darüber freuen, manche sich betrüben, some will rejoice at it, and some will grieve. But, in general, it denotes number with a certain reference to the quality of a thing (*quidam* in Latin), as ich habe ihn vor einigen Jahren gesehen, I have seen him

some years ago; but, manches Jahr ist weniger fruchtbar als andere, many a year is less fruitful than others; manche Menschen verstecken sich, wenn es donnert, some people hide themselves when it thunders.

4. Viel; vieler, viele, vieles, much. Viel refers to intensity and quantity, vieler to number; as lerne nicht auf einmal Vieles, sondern viel, do not, at once, learn many things, but much (*i.e.* with earnestness); viel Wein, much wine; viel er Wein, many sorts of wine: viel Gemüse wächst auf dem Felde, a great quantity of vegetables grows in the field; vieles Gemüse wurde nicht reif, many sorts of vegetables did not get ripe.

Obs. 1. Vieler, viele, vieles can be preceded by the definite article or by pronouns, and then it is declined like an adjective, as das viele Geld, the great quantity of money; seine vielen Geschäfte, his many occupations.

Obs. 2. Wenig, not much, is treated in its use exactly like viel; ich habe weniges Getreide gesehen, I have seen few sorts of grain; er hat wenige Feinde, he has few enemies; ich hatte wenig, und du hast mir das Wenige genommen, I had only a few things, and these you have taken from me. Instead of ein weniges, it is said ein wenig,—as Hat er viel gutes Bier? Has he much good beer? Nur ein wenig, only a small quantity.

Obs. 3. The comparative of viel, much, is mehr, more. This is generally used without an article, except the phrase ein mehres or ein mehreres, more of it; as davon wollen wir später ein mehres sprechen, of this we will speak more afterwards.

Obs. 4. Viele and Wenige are used, in plural, as substantives of persons, and then declined as adjectives without article, as Viele waren eingeladen, doch nur Wenige fanden sich ein, many were invited, but only few assembled; die Hoffnung vieler Tausende wurde so vernichtet, the hope of many thousands was thus destroyed.

5. Genug, enough; Etwas, something; Nichts, nothing, are indefinite numbers which cannot be declined. When etwas is coupled with the adverb irgend in a question, they correspond to the English any thing; hat er irgend etwas gesagt? has he said any thing? When after Etwas and Nichts an adjective follows, this is declined like the definite article, as etwas Gutes, something good; nichts Heiliges, nothing sacred. Etwas, before collective names and names of materials, is the English *some*, as geben Sie mir etwas Wasser, etwas Brod, etwas Geld, give me some water, some bread, some money. Etwas, in familiar language, is shortened into was, as ich habe Ihnen was zu sagen, I have something to tell you.

CHAP. V. ON PRONOUNS.

§ 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns are in German—ich, I; du, thou; er, he; sie, she; es, it; wir, we; ihr, you; sie, they. They are declined in the following way:—

FIRST PERSON.

Singular.	Plural.
N. ich, I	N. wir, we
G. meiner, of me	G. unser, of us
D. mir, to me	D. uns, to us
A. mich, me	A. uns, us

SECOND PERSON.

Singular.	Plural.
N. du, thou	N. Ihr, you
G. deiner, of thee	G. euer, of you
D. dir, to thee	D. euch, to you
A. dich, thee	A. euch, you

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. er, he	sie, she	es, it
G. seiner, of him	ihrer, of her	seiner, of it

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
D. ihm, to him	ihr, to her	ihm, to it
A. ihn, him	sie, her	es, it

THIRD PERSON PLURAL (FOR ALL THE THREE GENDERS).

N. sie, they	D. ihnen, to them
G. ihrer, of them	A. sie, them

OBSERVATIONS.

1. A shorter poetical form for the genitive singular of the first person is mein, of me; of the second person, dein, of thee; and for the third person masculine and neuter, sein, of him, of it: as gedenke mein, remember me; vergiß mein nicht, forget me not; ich pflege dein, I attend on thee; ich vergesse sein nicht, I do not forget him *or* it.

2. If the genitive of personal pronouns is followed by a preposition like wegen, on account, a t is inserted after unser and euer—unsertwegen, euertwegen, on our account, on your account; but, in the other genitive forms, the terminating r is changed into t—meinetwegen, on my account; deinetwegen on thy account; seinetwegen, on his *or* its account; ihretwegen on her *or* their account.

3. The reflective pronoun adopts, in its declension, the forms of the personal pronoun; only in the third person of the dative and accusative it has one particular form, sich, for the three genders of the singular, and for the plural—so that sich means to himself, to herself, to itself, to themselves, &c.; for instance, du ärgerst dich, thou vexest thyself; ich mache mir das Vergnügen, I give myself the pleasure; wir machen uns lustig, we make ourselves merry; ihr begnüget euch, you content yourselves; er schreibt sich vor, he prescribes to himself; sie räth sich gut, she gives herself good advice; sie schmückt sich, she adorns herself; sie nehmen sich vor, they propose to themselves.

4. The adjective selbst or selber, self, is added to the German personal pronoun in order to narrow its meaning, and to exclude every other person; for instance, ich selbst, I my-

self; du selbst, thou thyself; ihm selbst zur Verwunderung, to his own astonishment. But this selbst or selber sometimes stands for the reflective pronoun, as das lernt sich von selber, that is learned by itself (*i.e.* easily); er that es von selbst, he did it of his own accord.

5. The pronoun einander is reciprocal, it means *one another*, and is shortened from einer den andern: it remains unchanged, except in genitive, which is declined einer des andern; for instance, sie drängen einander, they urge each other; sie schreiben an einander, they write to each other; wir lieben einander, we love each other; ihr lobet einander, you praise each other; sie denken an einander or einer des andern, they think of one another. This einander is often joined with prepositions, as wir rechnen auf einander, we depend upon each other; sie reiten mit einander, they ride together; alles durch einander werfen, to throw all things confusedly together. It is, however, to be remarked that, where no misunderstanding can take place, the reflective is used in its stead, as sie lieben, hassen, verfolgen, sich, they love, hate, persecute one another; nun habt Ihr Euch, now you have (belong to) each other; Verwandte sind sich alle starke Seelen, all strong-minded men are related to each other.

6. Es, it, when preceded by a preposition, is always changed into the adverb da, and placed before the preposition, as damit, with it; dadurch, through it; dafür, for it.

§ 2. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive pronouns, in German, are either conjunctive or absolute. The former are:

Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
mein, my	meine	mein
dein, thy	deine	dein
sein, his, its	seine	sein
ihr, her	ihre	ihr
unser, our	unsre	unser
euer, your	eure	euer
ihr, their	ihre	ihr

They are declined like the article ein in the singular, and in the plural like the definite article; thus,

SINGULAR.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	mein, my	meine	mein
G.	meines, of my	meiner	meines
D.	meinem, to my	meiner	meinem
A.	meinen, my	meine	mein

PLURAL (FOR ALL THREE GENDERS).

N.	meine, my	D.	meinen, to my
G.	meiner, of my	A.	meine, my

These conjunctive pronouns are always joined with a substantive; whilst the absolute ones, referring to a substantive, are used alone. They are—

der meinige or meine, die meinige or meine, das meinige or meine, mine.

der deinige or deine, die deinige or deine, das deinige or deine, thine.

der ſeinige or ſeine, &c., his, its.

der ihrige or ihre, &c., hers.

der unſrige or unſere, &c., ours.

der eurige or euere, &c., yours.

der ihrige or ihre, &c., theirs.

They are declined like adjectives with the definite article. But instead of der meinige, deinige, &c., we may also simply add the termination er, e, and es, to the conjunctive pronouns, and say absolutely—

Singular.				Plural.
meiner	meine	meines,	mine	meine
deiner	deine	deines,	thine	deine
ſeiner	ſeine	ſeines,	his, its	ſeine
ihrer	ihre	ihres,	hers	ihre
unſerer	unſere	unſeres,	ours	unſere
eurer	eure	eures,	yours	eure
ihrer	ihre	ihres,	theirs	ihre

They are declined like adjectives without any article. Mein Freund und der seinige, or der seine or seiner, my friend and his; meine Freundinn und die ihrige, or die ihre or ihre, my female friend and hers.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The possessive pronouns absolute are indeclinable, and sound mein, dein, sein, ihr, sein, &c., when they are predicates to substantives or to a personal pronoun which refers to a certain before-mentioned object, as der Hut ist mein, the hat is mine; die Schuld ist dein, the fault is thine; die Belohnung ist unser, the reward is ours; der Ruhm ist ihr, the glory is hers *or* theirs. Ist das deine Feder? is that thy pen? Ja, sie ist mein, yes, it is mine. Ist das dein Geld? is that thy money? Nein, es ist nicht mein, no, it is not mine.

2. But when these pronouns are predicates to a substantive which is only *generally* referred to by es or das, then they are declined; for instance, Ist das dein Vater? is that thy father? Ja, es ist meiner, or der meine, or der meinige, yes, it is my father. Ist das seine Mutter? is that his mother? Nein, es ist unsere, or die unsere, or die unsrige, no, it is our mother. War es sein Haus, das abbrannte? was it his house that was burnt down? Nein, es war nicht seines, or das seine, or das seinige, no, it was not his house. Sind es deine Bücher? are these your books? Ja, es sind meine, or die meinen, or die meinigen, yes, they are mine. Ist das dein Tisch oder meiner? is this thy table or mine? Es ist weder deiner noch meiner, es ist seiner, it is neither thine nor mine, it is his. Ein Herz wie seines, a heart like his.

3. Seine, his, feminine, is sometimes abbreviated into Se., as Se. Majestät hat geruht, his majesty has condescended; and Seiner, to his, feminine, into Sr., as Sr. Majestät beliebte es, it pleased his majesty.

4. The following expressions are to be noticed as idiomatic—1. meines Gleichen, deines Gleichen, &c. (genitive of

mein Gleiches, dein Gleiches), of my (like) station, as ich gehe mit meines Gleichen um, I deal with people of my sphere; der Angeklagte soll von seines Gleichen gerichtet werden, the defendant is to be judged by (jurors of) his station (in society). 2. Das Meinige means *my property* and *my duty*, as ich habe das Meinige wieder, I have my property back again; ich thue das Meinige, und du thue das Deinige, I do my duty, and thou do thine; gieb jedem das Seinige, give each his own. 3. Die Meinigen, &c., means my family, &c., as die Meinigen sind jetzt auf dem Lande, wo sind die Deinigen? my family is now in the country, where is yours? Die Fürsten beschützten tapfer die Ihrigen, the princes bravely defended their families and subjects.

§ 3. ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The German demonstrative pronouns are six in number, namely:

1. Dieser, diese, dieses, this; 2. jener, jene, jenes, that; 3. der, die, das, this, that; 4. solcher, solche, solches, such; 5. derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, the same; 6. derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, he (who), &c.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Dieser, this, and jener, that, are declined like the definite article. For the neuter of dieser, dieses, there is found a shorter form, dies, which can never be followed by a substantive, as er schwieg, dies gefiel mir nicht, he was silent, that did not please me.

2. The third pronoun, der, die, das, is declined exactly like the accented article when followed by a substantive, as ich bin de'r Sache überdrüßig, I am tired of that affair; but, when standing without a substantive, it has some peculiar forms: these are, in the genitive singular, dessen or deß for the masculine and neuter, and deren for the feminine; in genitive plural deren and derer, and in dative plural denen.

	Singular.			Plural.
	der	die	das, this	die, those
G.	dessen / deß	deren	dessen / deß	deren / derer
D.				denen

The shorter genitive form, deß, is (*a.*) generally used in compounds with prepositions, as deßwegen, on account of this; deßhalb, therefore: (*b.*) in poetical language; for instance, deß rühme der Tyrann sich nicht, of that the tyrant may not boast.

The longer genitive forms, dessen and deren, when compounded with prepositions, have a t inserted after n, as dessentwegen, dessenthalben, on account of this; derentwegen, derenthalben, on account of those.

The genitive plural has the form deren when referring to a preceding substantive; for instance, ich hatte noch drei Güter, deren sollte mich das Schicksal nicht berauben, I had three goods left, Fate was not to deprive me of them:—but, when followed by a pronoun relative, it has the form derer, as das ist das Loos derer, welche nicht hören, that is the lot of those who will not listen.

3. The pronoun der, die, das, when compounded with prepositions which govern the dative or accusative case, is changed into the accented adverb da', and placed before the preposition, as da'mit, with this; da'für, for that: and if the preposition begins with a vowel, an r is inserted after da; for instance, da'rum, around this; da'raus, out of this; da'rin, in that.

4. The pronoun solcher, solche, solches, such, follows the declension of the definite article. But when connected with the indefinite article, this (*a.*) either precedes the pronoun, contrary to the English, as ein solcher Mann, eine solche Frau, ein solches Kind, such a man, such a woman, such a child; and in this case the pronoun solcher is declined like an adjective, as eines solchen Mannes, of such a man; einem

solchen Kinde, to such a child: or (*b.*) it follows the pronoun, like in English, but then solcher is changed into the form solch, and is not declined at all; for instance, solch ein Mann, solch eine Frau, solch ein Kind; genitive, solch eines Mannes, solch einer Frau, solch eines Kindes, &c.

5. The fifth pronoun, derselbe, the same, is a compound of the definite article and an adjective, derived from the word selber. Both parts of the compound are declined, and the genitive, for instance, is desselben, derselben, desselben, of the same. In order to lay greater stress on the identity, the form of a similar compound is used, derselbige, dieselbige, dasselbige; or ein und are put before derselbe; for instance, ein und derselbe Mann, the very same man: but this ein is indeclinable, so that *the same woman* is, in German, ein und dieselbe Frau, genitive ein und derselben Frau:—ich habe es ein und demselben gegeben, I have given it to that very same person.

To express the sameness, another compound pronoun is sometimes used, der nämliche, derived from Namen, name, as die nämliche Handschrift, the same hand-writing; das nämliche Buch, the same book.

6. The sixth pronoun, derjenige, is always followed by a relative pronoun, and corresponds to the English *he who*, as das Glück begünstigt diejenigen welche ausharren, fortune favours them who persevere. It is compounded of the definite article and an adjective derived from the pronoun jener, and both parts are declined, so that the genitive singular is desjenigen, derjenigen, desjenigen.

§ 4. ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The German language has five pronouns relative; they are—1. welcher, welche, welches, who, which; 2. der, die, das, who, which; 3. wer, was, who, what; 4. wie er, wie sie, wie es, such as; 5. so, who.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Welcher, welche, welches, *who*, *which*, is declined like the definite article: but the genitive occurs very rarely, and then only when a substantive follows; for instance, Homer, welches Mannes Leben uns unbekannt ist, &c., Homer, the life of which man is unknown to us, &c. If no substantive follows, the genitive form is borrowed from the second relative pronoun, der, die, das, *sing.* dessen, deren, dessen, *pl.* deren, as der Mann, dessen Bruder hier war, the man whose brother was here; die Frau, deren Bruder—, the woman whose brother—; die Männer, deren Freunde hier waren, the men whose friends were here.

In familiar language, welcher, welche, welches is used for the indefinite pronoun einiger, some, as Hast du etwas Geld? have you any money? Ich habe welches, I have some. Hast du viele deutsche Bücher, have you many German books? Ich habe welche, I have some. Da rennen schon wieder welche die Treppe hinauf, there are again some people running up-stairs.

2. Der, die, das, *who*, *which*, as a relative pronoun, has the same declension as the demonstrative pronoun (§ 3. *Obs.* 2), only the genitive plural never is derer, but always deren, as die Dichter, deren Werke wir loben, the poets whose works we praise; die Frauen, deren Kinder wir sahen, the women whose children we saw.

The same rule is here also observed in compounds with prepositions, as deßwegen, deßhalb, on account of which; dessentwegen, derenthalben, on account of whom.

3. Wer, was refer to persons and things in general; wer to masculine and feminine; was to neuter: as weise ist der, wer das will, was er kann, wise is he who wishes for that which he can attain; wer nicht hören will, der muß fühlen, he who will not listen, must feel; was ich liebe, das beschütze ich, what I love, that I protect. It is thus declined:

N. wer, was	D. wem
G. wessen or weß	A. wen, was

a. The form of the genitive, weſſen or weß, is common to wer and was, but the dative, wem, is only used as a masculine; for instance, weß das Herz voll iſt, deß ſtrömt es über, by what a heart is filled, of that it overflows; wem es hier nicht gefällt, der weiche, to whom it does not please here, he may go; der Grund weßhalb er nicht kam—, the reason why (on account of which) he did not come—.

b. In familiar language was is employed instead of the indefinite etwas; for instance, ich habe dir was Wichtiges zu ſagen, I have to tell you something of importance.

c. Wer and was, when followed by auch, *also*, correspond to the English *whoever*, *whatever* (*quisquis*, *quidquid* in Latin), as wer es auch geſagt hat, er hat eine Unwahrheit geſagt, whoever has said it, he has told an untruth; was Feuers Wuth ihm auch geraubt, whatever the rage of the fire has taken from him.

d. Was, when compounded with prepositions governing a dative or accusative case, is changed into wo, and put before them, as womit, with what; wofür, for what; wodurch, through what. If the preposition begins with a vowel, an r is inserted, as worauf, upon which; woran, on which; worin, in which. However, if the preposition um, about, is the compound, was cannot be changed, and *about which* is, in German, um was (not worum).

4. Wie er, wie ſie, wie es correspond to the English *such as* (*qualis* in Latin, *tel que* in French): wie is an adverb, and therefore indeclinable, but er, ſie, es have the same declension as the pronouns personal; for instance, Freunde, wie ſie ſelten zu ſehen ſind, friends *such as* are rarely to be seen; ein Mann wie ihn die Welt nicht wieder erblicken wird, a man *such as* the world will not behold again. Sometimes the pronoun personal er, ſie, es is omitted, as ein Heer kam zuſammen, wie noch nie ein Kaiſer nach Italien geführt hatte, an army was assembled such as never yet an emperor had led to Italy.

5. So (which is likewise the English *so*, *thus*) is sometimes an indeclinable pronoun relative, which refers in-

differently to persons and things, but is used only in the nominative and accusative, without any distinctions of gender or number. It mostly occurs in poetry, and sometimes in solemn oratory, never in familiar conversation; for instance, die Männer, so zugegen waren, the men who were present; die Worte, so ich gehört, the words which I have heard.

6. There are three indeclinable pronouns which are used both as demonstratives and relatives—derlei, which is antiquated, deßgleichen, and dergleichen; they all three mean *such* when demonstratives, and *such as* when relatives; for instance, derlei Menschen sind mir nicht vorgekommen, such people I have not met with; ein Opfer, deßgleichen ich nicht bringen kann, a sacrifice such as I cannot offer; dergleichen Neuigkeiten sind nicht selten, such news are not rare; Häuser, dergleichen man nur in London sehen kann, houses such as one can only see in London.

§ 5. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The German language has three interrogative pronouns:

wer? was? who? what?
welcher, welche, welches? which?
was für ein, was für eine, was für ein? what sort of?

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pronoun wer, was is declined exactly like the same word when pronoun relative; the genitive weß, however, here only occurs in compounds, as weßwegen? on what account? Else it follows all the rules and exceptions mentioned under the relative wer, was (§ 4. *Obs.* 3. *a*).

2. Welcher, welche, welches is declined like the relative pronoun; the genitive, likewise, is only employed when a substantive follows, as Kennst du die Kinder dieses Mannes or dieser Leute? do you know the children of this man *or* of

these people? Welches Mannes or welcher Leute Kinder meinst du? the children of which man *or* of which people do you mean? If no substantive follows, the genitive is adopted from the interrogative pronoun wer, was, namely, wessen; as wessen Garten hast du lieber? whose garden do you prefer? In the other cases it is indifferent if a substantive follows or not; for instance, welchen Knaben soll ich mitnehmen? which boy shall I take with me? welcher von diesen Knaben soll mitgehen? which of these boys is to go with me? welches von diesen Büchern hast du gelesen? which of these books have you been reading? Gieb mir meinen Hut—welchen? give me my hat—which? Reiche mir eine von diesen Blumen—welche? Reach me one of those flowers—which?

3. *a*. In the pronoun was für ein, the two first words are indeclinable, and ein follows the declension of the indefinite article when a substantive follows, as was für ein Mann? what sort of man? mit was für einer Sprache beschäftigst du dich jetzt? with what sort of language are you now occupying yourself? von was für einem Lehrer redet ihr? of what sort of teacher are you talking? If no substantive follows, it has the gender-termination einer, eine, eines, and in plural the familiar welche (§ 4. *Obs.* 1), as Ein armer Mann war hier—was für einer? a poor man was here—what sort of one? Mehrere Soldaten wohnten in meinem Hause—was für welche? several soldiers lived in my house—what sort of ones? Before collective names, before names of abstract things and materials, and in plural, ein is omitted, as was für Geld, what sort of coin? was für Ehre konnte es mir bringen? what kind of honour could it gain for me? was für Wein? what sort of wine? was für Menschen? what sort of people?

b. The words was für may be placed at a distance from each other whenever it occasions no ambiguity. It may be said—was für ein Buch hast du gelesen? or was hast du für ein Buch gelesen? what sort of book have you read? but, instead of was für Geld hast du bekommen? what sort of money have you got? it could not be said—was hast du für Geld bekommen?

since this may also mean—what have you got for your money?

c. Was für ein is also used by way of wonder and exclamation, as was für ein Held! what a hero! was für ein Wunder! what a miracle! was für Berge! what mountains! Instead of this was für ein, welcher is often employed, when an adjective follows, as welcher gute Mann! what a good man! Or welcher is shortened into the root welch, but then either the indefinite article must follow, or an adjective declined after the first declension, as welch ein Mann! what a man! welch eine That! what a deed! welch ein Unternehmen! what an undertaking! welch guter Mensch! what a good man! welch freundliche Aussicht! what a cheerful prospect! welch herrliches Gebäude! what a splendid building! welch unerhörte Thaten what unheard of deeds!

4. The difference in the meaning of the three interrogative pronouns is this—wer and was ask for things in general; was für ein asks for the particular quality or the species of the object; and welcher inquires after the individual of a mentioned species; for instance, Wer hat das Fenster zerbrochen? who has broken the window? Ein Knabe, a boy. Was für ein Knabe? what (kind of) boy? Der Sohn des Nachbars? the son of the neighbour. Welcher? which? Der jüngste, the youngest. Was hat der Blitz zerschmettert? what has the lightning crashed to pieces? Einen Baum, a tree. Was für einen Baum? what species of tree? Einen Apfelbaum, an apple-tree. Welchen? which? Den vor dem Hause, that before the house.

§ 6. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns in German are—man, one; einer, a person; jemand, somebody; niemand, nobody.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Man, one, the French *on*, is only used in the nominative of the singular. It may be rendered by *people*, *one*,

we, *you*, or by the passive with *it*, as man ſagt, people say, it is said; man kann ſich auf ihn nicht verlaſſen, one, we, you cannot rely on him. The cases of man are derived from the personal pronoun, singular or plural, as Wie gern erinnert man ſich, was uns in der Kindheit begegnet iſt! How much do we like to remember what has occurred to us in childhood! Man verwechſelt leicht das Gehörte mit dem, was wir ſelbſt erfuhren, we easily confuse what we have heard with what we experienced ourselves. The cases can also be derived from the second indefinite pronoun einer.

2. Einer, one, a person, in such expressions—it does *one* good, it makes *one* laugh, es thut einem gut, es macht einen lachen. Einer is only used in the masculine form, and refers to the whole species, as es verging einem Hören und Sehen, people lost their (hearing and sight) senses. The cases can also be formed from the personal pronoun er.

The sentence, "what *one* likes to do, becomes *to one* easy," can, therefore, be translated:

a. Was man gern thut, das wird einem / ihm / uns } leicht.

b. Was einer gern thut, das wird einem / ihm } leicht.

3. Jemand, some one, and Niemand, no one, are masculine as well as feminine. They have in genitive an s, as ich habe jemands Eigenthum gefunden, I have found some one's property; ich bin niemands Feind, I am the enemy of nobody. The dative and accusative are indeclinable, as du haſt mit niemand geſprochen, you have spoken to nobody; ich habe jemand geſehen, I have seen somebody. The dative and accusative, however, receive the termination of the definite article masculine em and en, to avoid an equivocal meaning; for instance, du haſt uns jemand empfohlen may mean—*you have recommended somebody to us*, and *us to somebody*; the last, in which jemand is the dative, is therefore translated, du haſt uns jemandem empfohlen: in the same way, *nobody*

hates my heart is, in German, mein Herz haßt niemand (nominative); but, *my heart hates nobody* is mein Herz haßt niemanden (accusative): mein Kind hat niemand (nominative) bemerkt, nobody has observed my child; mein Kind hat niemanden (accusative) bemerkt, my child has observed nobody.

SECTION III.—ON VERBS.

1. The German language has three times or tenses —the present, the past, and the future. In each time the action is considered either as lasting, or as accomplished; hence there are six tenses:

I. Present.—1. Lasting, the present; 2. accomplished, the perfect.

II. Past.—1. Lasting, the imperfect; 2. accomplished, the pluperfect.

III. Future.—1. Lasting, the future; 2. accomplished, the future perfect.

In the future, the action can be represented as possible under certain circumstances; in this case, the future tenses are called conditionals.

IV. Future Conditional.—1. Lasting, the conditional; 2. accomplished, the conditional perfect.

These form altogether the eight tenses of the German verb.

2. Each tense has two numbers, the singular and the plural; and each number has three persons, which are expressed by the personal pronouns ich, du, er (sie, es), wir, ihr, sie.

3. All the tenses (the conditionals, of course, excepted) have two moods—the indicative and the subjunctive.

4. In each verb there are two infinitives—one for the present, and one for the past.

5. Each verb has two participles—one for the present, and one for the past; the passive, however, only has one participle, and that for the past.

6. Each verb has an imperative for the present tense.

7. In reference to meaning, there are six kinds of verbs in German—1. auxiliary; 2. active; 3. passive; 4. neuter; 5. reflective and reciprocal; 6. impersonal.

§ 1. THE CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

There are three auxiliary verbs in German:

1. Sein, to be.
2. Haben, to have.
3. Werden, to become.

They are conjugated in the following way:—

1. Sein, to be.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich bin, I am	ich sei, I may be
du bist, thou art	du seist, thou mayest be
er (sie, es) ist, he (she, it) is	er (sie, es) sei, he (she, it) may be.
Plural.	Plural.
wir sind, we are	wir seien, we may be
ihr seid, ye are	ihr seiet, ye may be
sie sind, they are	sie seien, they may be
IMPERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich war, I was	ich wäre, I might be
du warst, thou wast	du wärest, thou mightest be
er war, he was	er wäre, he might be

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Plural.	Plural.
wir waren, we were	wir wären, we might be
ihr waret, ye were	ihr wäret, ye might be
sie waren, they were	sie wären, they might be

PERFECT.

Singular.	Singular.
ich bin gewesen, I have been	ich sei gewesen, I may have been
du bist gewesen	du seist gewesen
er ist gewesen	er sei gewesen
Plural.	Plural.
wir sind gewesen	wir seien gewesen
ihr seid gewesen	ihr seiet gewesen
sie sind gewesen	sie seien gewesen

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.	Singular.
ich war gewesen, I had been	ich wäre gewesen, I might have been
du warst gewesen	du wärest gewesen
er war gewesen	er wäre gewesen
Plural.	Plural.
wir waren gewesen	wir wären gewesen
ihr waret gewesen	ihr wäret gewesen
sie waren gewesen	sie wären gewesen

FUTURE.

Singular.	Singular.
ich werde sein, I shall or will be	ich werde sein, I shall be
du wirst sein	du werdest sein
er wird sein	er werde sein
Plural.	Plural.
wir werden sein	wir werden sein
ihr werdet sein	ihr werdet sein
sie werden sein	sie werden sein

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich werde gewesen sein, I shall have been	ich werde gewesen sein, I shall have been
du wirst gewesen sein	du werdest gewesen sein
er wird gewesen sein, &c.	er werde gewesen sein, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

Singular.	Plural.
ich würde sein, I should be	wir würden sein, we should be
du würdest sein, thou wouldst be	ihr würdet sein, you would be
er würde sein, he would be	sie würden sein, they would be

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde gewesen sein, I should have been
du würdest gewesen sein, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular. sei, be thou
sei er, let him be
Plural. seien wir, let us be
seid, be ye
sein sie, let them be

INFINITIVES.

PRES. sein, to be
PRET. gewesen sein, to have been

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. seiend, being
PRET. gewesen, been.

---

2. Haben, to have.

PRESENT.

Singular.	Singular.
ich habe, I have	ich habe, I may have
du hast, thou hast	du habest, thou mayest have
er (sie, es) hat, he (she, it) has	er (sie, es) habe he (she, it) may have

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Plural.	Plural.
wir haben, we have	wir haben, we may have
ihr habet, ye have	ihr habet, ye may have
sie haben, they have	sie haben, they may have

IMPERFECT.

Singular.	Singular.
ich hatte, I had	ich hätte, I might have
du hattest, thou hadst	du hättest, thou mightest have
er hatte, he had	er hätte, he might have
Plural.	Plural.
wir hatten, we had	wir hätten, we might have
ihr hattet, ye had	ihr hättet, ye might have
sie hatten, they had	sie hätten, they might have

PERFECT.

Singular.	Singular
ich habe gehabt, I have had	ich habe gehabt, I may have had
du hast gehabt	du habest gehabt
er hat gehabt	er habe gehabt
Plural.	Plural.
wir haben gehabt	wir haben gehabt
ihr habet gehabt	ihr habet gehabt
sie haben gehabt	sie haben gehabt

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.	Singular.
ich hatte gehabt, I had had	ich hätte gehabt, I might have had
du hattest gehabt	du hättest gehabt
er hatte gehabt	er hätte gehabt
Plural.	Plural.
wir hatten gehabt	wir hätten gehabt
ihr hattet gehabt	ihr hättet gehabt
sie hatten gehabt	sie hätten gehabt

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
FUTURE.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich werde haben, I shall have	ich werde haben, I shall have
du wirſt haben	du werdeſt haben
er wird haben	er werde haben
Plural.	Plural.
wir werden haben	wir werden haben
ihr werdet haben	ihr werdet haben
ſie werden haben	ſie werden haben
FUTURE PERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had	ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had
du wirſt gehabt haben	du werdeſt gehabt haben
er wird gehabt haben, &c.	er werde gehabt haben, &c.
CONDITIONAL.	
Singular.	Plural.
ich würde haben, I should or would have	wir würden haben, we should have
du würdeſt haben	ihr würdet haben
er würde haben	ſie würden haben
CONDITIONAL PERFECT.	
Singular.	
ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular. habe, have thou
habe er, let him have

Plural. haben wir, let us have
habet, have you
haben ſie, let them have

INFINITIVES.

PRES. haben, to have
PRET. gehabt haben, to have had

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. habend, having
PRET. gehabt, had

---

3. Werden, to become.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich werde, I become	ich werde, I may become
du wirst, thou becomest	du werdest, thou mayest become
er (sie, es) wird, he (she, it) becomes	er (sie, es) werde, he (she, it) may become
Plural.	Plural.
wir werden, we become	wir werden, we may become
ihr werdet, ye become	ihr werdet, ye may become
sie werden, they become	sie werden, they may become
IMPERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich wurde or ich ward, I became	ich würde, I might become
du wurdest or du wardst, thou becamest	du würdest, thou mightest become
er wurde or er ward, he became	er würde, he might become
Plural.	Plural.
wir wurden, we became	wir würden, we might become
ihr wurdet, ye became	ihr würdet, ye might become
sie wurden, they became	sie würden, they might become
PERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich bin geworden, I have become	ich sei geworden, I may have become
du bist geworden	du seist geworden
er ist geworden	er sei geworden

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Plural.	Plural.
wir ſind geworden	wir ſeien geworden
ihr ſeid geworden	ihr ſeiet geworden
ſie ſind geworden	ſie ſeien geworden

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.	Singular.
ich war geworden, I had become	ich wåre geworden, I had become
du warſt geworden	du wåreſt geworden
er war geworden	er wåre geworden
Plural.	Plural.
wir waren geworden	wir wåren geworden
ihr waret geworden	ihr wåret geworden
ſie waren geworden	ſie wåren geworden

FUTURE.

Singular.	Singular.
ich werde werden, I shall become	ich werde werden, I shall become
du wirſt werden	du werdeſt werden
er wird werden	er werde werden
Plural.	Plural.
wir werden werden	wir werden werden
ihr werdet werden	ihr werdet werden
ſie werden werden	ſie werden werden

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular.	Singular.
ich werde geworden ſein, I shall have become	ich werde geworden ſein, I shall have become
du wirſt geworden ſein	du werdeſt geworden ſein
er wird geworden ſein, &c.	er werde geworden ſein, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

Singular.

ich würde werden, I should become

du würdeſt werden, &c.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde geworden ſein, I should have become
du würdeſt geworden ſein, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular. werde, become thou
werde er, let him become
Plural. werden wir, let us become
werdet, become ye
werden ſie, let them become

INFINITIVE.

PRES. werden, to become
PRET. geworden ſein, to have become

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. werdend, becoming
PRET. geworden, become.

§ 2. CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS ACTIVE.

1. Verbs active have simple forms only in the following tenses and moods:—

1. For the present indicative and subjunctive.
2. For the imperfect indicative and subjunctive.
3. For the infinitive present.
4. For the imperative; and
5. For the two participles.

2. The terminations of those simple forms are contained in the following table:—

1. INFINITIVE —en

2. PARTICIPLE PRESENT —end
PARTICIPLE PAST— ge—t

3. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Singular. —e
—ſt
—t
Plural. —en
—et
—en

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Singular. —e
—eſt
—e
Plural. —en
—et
—en

4. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.		IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Singular.	—te	*Singular.*	—ete
	—teſt		—eteſt
	—te		—ete
Plural.	—ten	*Plural.*	—eten
	—tet		—etet
	—ten		—eten

5. IMPERATIVE.

		Plural.	—en
Singular.	—e		—et
	—e		—en

3. The other tenses, with their moods, are formed by the assistance of the auxiliary ich habe, I have, connected with the past participle, and the auxiliary ich werde, I shall, connected with the infinitives of the active verb, exactly as in English.

4. If to the root lob, *praise*, the given terminations are added, the following will be the conjugation of the verb active lob=en, *to praise*.

Loben, to praise.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular. ich lobe, I praise
du lobſt, thou praisest
er lobt, he praises

Plural. wir loben, we praise
ihr lobet, ye praise
ſie loben, they praise

IMPERFECT.

Singular. ich lobte, I praised
du lobteſt, thou praisedst
er lobte, he praised

Plural. wir lobten, we praised
ihr lobtet, ye praised
ſie lobten, they praised

PERFECT.

Singular. ich habe gelobt, I have praised
du haſt gelobt, thou hast praised
er hat gelobt, he has praised

Plural. wir haben gelobt, we have praised
ihr habet gelobt, ye have praised
ſie haben gelobt, they have praised

PLUPERFECT.

Singular. ich hatte gelobt, I had praised
du hatteſt gelobt, thou hadst praised
er hatte gelobt, he had praised

Plural. wir hatten gelobt, we had praised
ihr hattet gelobt, ye had praised
ſie hatten gelobt, they had praised

FUTURE.

Singular. ich werde loben, I shall praise
du wirſt loben, thou shalt praise
er wird loben, he shall praise

Plural. wir werden loben, we shall praise
ihr werdet loben, ye shall praise
ſie werden loben, they shall praise

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular. ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised
du wirſt gelobt haben, thou shalt have praised
er wird gelobt haben, he shall have praised

Plural. wir werden gelobt haben, we shall have praised
ihr werdet gelobt haben, ye shall have praised
ſie werden gelobt haben, they shall have praised

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular. ich lobe, I may praise
du lobeſt, thou mayest praise
er lobe, he may praise

Plural. wir loben, we may praise
ihr lobet, ye may praise
ſie loben, they may praise

IMPERFECT.

Singular. ich lobete, I might praise
du lobeteſt, thou mightest praise
er lobete, he might praise

Plural. wir lobeten, we might praise
ihr lobetet, ye might praise
ſie lobeten, they might praise

PERFECT.

Singular. ich habe gelobt, I may have praised
du habeſt gelobt, thou mayest have praised
er habe gelobt, he may have praised

Plural. wir haben gelobt, we may have praised
ihr habet gelobt, ye may have praised
ſie haben gelobt, they may have praised

PLUPERFECT.

Singular. ich hätte gelobt, I might have praised
du hätteſt gelobt, thou mightest have praised
er hätte gelobt, he might have praised

Plural. wir hätten gelobt, we might have praised
ihr hättet gelobt, ye might have praised
ſie hätten gelobt, they might have praised

FUTURE.

Singular. ich werde loben, I shall praise
du werdeſt loben, thou shalt praise
er werde loben, he shall praise

Plural. wir werden loben, we shall praise
ihr werdet loben, ye shall praise
sie werden loben, they shall praise

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular. ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised
du werdest gelobt haben, thou shalt have praised
er werde gelobt haben, he shall have praised

Plural. wir werden gelobt haben, we shall have praised
ihr werdet gelobt haben, ye shall have praised
sie werden gelobt haben, they shall have praised

CONDITIONAL.

Singular. ich würde loben, I should praise
du würdest loben, thou wouldst praise
er würde loben, he would praise

Plural. wir würden loben, we should praise
ihr würdet loben, ye would praise
sie würden loben, they would praise

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

Singular. ich würde gelobt haben, I should have praised
du würdest gelobt haben, thou wouldst have praised
er würde gelobt haben, he would have praised

Plural. wir würden gelobt haben, we should have praised
ihr würdet gelobt haben, ye would have praised
sie würden gelobt haben, they would have praised

IMPERATIVE.

Singular. lobe, praise thou
lobe er, praise he

Plural. loben wir, let us praise
lobet, praise ye
loben sie, praise they

INFINITIVES.

PRES. loben, to praise
PRET. gelobt haben, to have praised

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. lobend, praising
PRET. gelobt, praised.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. If a verbal root ends with an unaccented el or er, and the termination to be added is an e with following consonant, as en, end, et, in this case the e of the termination is omitted, as Handel, traffic—handel=n, to traffic—halbel=nd, trafficking—ihr handel=t, you traffic. In the first person of the present indicative, however, the e of the root is left out, as ich handl=e, I traffic. To the subjunctive this rule is not to be applied, as ich handele, du handelest, er handele, wir handelen, ihr handelet, sie handelen.

2. If a verbal root ends with an unaccented em or en, as Athem, breath, eben, even, the e of the root must be omitted, and an e inserted before the termination st and t, as ich athm=e, du athm=est, er athmet, wir athmen, ihr athmet, sie athmen.

3. If the verbal root ends with a hissing sound, as s, ss, ß, sch, an e is inserted before the termination st; for instance, du reisest, thou travellest; du hassest, thou hatest; du gießest, thou pourest; du haschest, thou catchest.

4. If the verbal root ends in a lingual sound, as d, dt, t, th, tt, an e is inserted before all consonant terminations; ich rede, I speak, du redest, er redet;—ich redete, I spoke; geredet, spoken.

5. The prefix ge of the participle is omitted when the infinitive terminates with i'ren or ieren, as regi'ert, governed; studi'rt, studied.

§ 3. CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS PASSIVE.

The passive verbs are formed differently from the English, not with the auxiliary sein, to be, but with

werden, to become. It is only to be observed that the participle geworden is changed, for the sake of euphony, into worden.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Gelobt werden, to be praised.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular. ich werde gelobt, I am praised
du wirſt gelobt, thou art praised
er wird gelobt, he is praised

Plural. wir werden gelobt, we are praised
ihr werdet gelobt, ye are praised
ſie werden gelobt, they are praised

IMPERFECT.

Singular. ich wurde or ward gelobt, I was praised
du wurdeſt or wardſt gelobt, thou wast praised
er wurde or ward gelobt, he was praised

Plural. wir wurden gelobt, we were praised
ihr wurdet gelobt, ye were praised
ſie wurden gelobt, they were praised

PERFECT.

Singular. ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised
du biſt gelobt worden, thou hast been praised
er iſt gelobt worden, he has been praised

Plural. wir ſind gelobt worden, we have been praised
ihr ſeid gelobt worden, ye have been praised
ſie ſind gelobt worden, they have been praised

PLUPERFECT.

Singular. ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised
du warſt gelobt worden, thou hadst been praised
er war gelobt worden, he had been praised

Plural. wir waren gelobt worden, we had been praised
ihr waret gelobt worden, ye had been praised
ſie waren gelobt worden, they had been praised

FUTURE.

Singular. ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised
du wirſt gelobt werden, thou shalt be praised
er wird gelobt werden, he shall be praised

Plural. wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be praised
ihr werdet gelobt werden, ye shall be praised
ſie werden gelobt werden, they shall be praised

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular. ich werde gelobt worden ſein, I shall have been praised
du wirſt gelobt worden ſein, thou shalt have been praised
er wird gelobt worden ſein, he shall have been praised

Plural. wir werden gelobt worden ſein, we shall have been praised
ihr werdet gelobt worden ſein, ye shall have been praised
ſie werden gelobt worden ſein, they shall have been praised

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular. ich werde gelobt, I may be praised
du werdeſt gelobt, thou mayest be praised
er werde gelobt, he may be praised

Plural. wir werden gelobt, we may be praised
ihr werdet gelobt, ye may be praised
ſie werden gelobt, they may be praised

IMPERFECT.

Singular. ich würde gelobt, I might be praised
du würdeſt gelobt, thou mightest be praised
er würde gelobt, he might be praised

Plural. wir würden gelobt, we might be praised
ihr würdet gelobt, ye might be praised
sie würden gelobt, they might be praised

PERFECT.

Singular. ich sei gelobt worden, I may have been praised
du seist gelobt worden, thou mayest have been praised
er sei gelobt worden, he may have been praised

Plural. wir seien gelobt worden, we may have been praised
ihr seiet gelobt worden, ye may have been praised
sie seien gelobt worden, they may have been praised

PLUPERFECT.

Singular. ich wäre gelobt worden, I might have been praised
du wärest gelobt worden, thou mightest have been praised
er wäre gelobt worden, he might have been praised

Plural. wir wären gelobt worden, we might have been praised
ihr wäret gelobt worden, ye might have been praised
sie wären gelobt worden, they might have been praised

FUTURE.

Singular. ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised
du werdest gelobt werden, thou shalt be praised
er werde gelobt werden, he shall be praised

Plural. wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be praised
ihr werdet gelobt werden, ye shall be praised
sie werden gelobt werden, they shall be praised

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular. ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised
du werdest gelobt worden sein, thou shalt have been praised
er werde gelobt worden sein, he shall have been praised

Plural. wir werden gelobt worden ſein, we shall have been praised
ihr werdet gelobt worden ſein, ye shall have been praised
ſie werden gelobt worden ſein, they shall have been praised

CONDITIONAL.

Singular. ich würde gelobt werden, I should be praised
du würdeſt gelobt werden, thou wouldst be praised
er würde gelobt werden, he would be praised
Plural. wir würden gelobt werden, we should be praised
ihr würdet gelobt werden, ye would be praised
ſie würden gelobt werden, they would be praised

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

Singular. ich würde gelobt worden ſein, I should have been praised
du würdeſt gelobt worden ſein, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular. werde gelobt, be thou praised
werde er gelobt, be he praised, or let him be praised
Plural. werdet gelobt, be ye praised
werden ſie gelobt, be they praised, or let them be praised

INFINITIVES.

PRES. gelobt werden, to be praised
PRET. gelobt worden ſein, to have been praised

PARTICIPLE.

PRET. gelobt, one that has been praised.

§ 4. CONJUGATION OF VERBS NEUTER.

Neuter verbs are (1) either conjugated like verbs active, with the auxiliary haben in the compound tenses, as weinen, to cry; ich habe geweint, I have cried: or (2) with the auxiliary ſein, as reiſen, to

travel; ich bin gereist, I have travelled. The whole latter verb would be thus conjugated:

INFIN. PRES.	reisen, to travel
INFIN. PERF.	gereist sein, to have travelled
PARTIC. PRES.	reisend, travelling
PARTIC. PERF.	gereist, travelled

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich reise, I travel	ich reise, I may travel
du reisest	du reisest
er reist	er reise
Plural.	Plural.
wir reisen	wir reisen
ihr reiset	ihr reiset
sie reisen	sie reisen
IMPERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich reiste, I travelled	ich reisete, I might travel
du reistest	du reisetest
er reiste	er reisete
Plural.	Plural.
wir reisten	wir reiseten
ihr reistet	ihr reisetet
sie reisten	sie reiseten
PERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich bin gereist, I have travelled	ich sei gereist, I may have travelled
du bist gereist	du seist gereist
er ist gereist	er sei gereist
Plural.	Plural.
wir sind gereist	wir seien gereist
ihr seid gereist	ihr seiet gereist
sie sind gereist	sie seien gereist

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PLUPERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich war gereist, I had travelled	ich wäre gereist, I might have travelled
du warst gereist	du wärest gereist
er war gereist	er wäre gereist
Plural.	Plural.
wir waren gereist	wir wären gereist
ihr waret gereist	ihr wäret gereist
sie waren gereist	sie wären gereist
FUTURE.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich werde reisen, I shall travel	ich werde reisen, I shall travel
du wirst reisen	du werdest reisen
er wird reisen	er werde reisen
Plural.	Plural.
wir werden reisen	wir werden reisen
ihr werdet reisen	ihr werdet reisen
sie werden reisen	sie werden reisen
FUTURE PERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
ich werde gereist sein, I shall have travelled	ich werde gereist sein, I shall have travelled
du wirst gereist sein	du werdest gereist sein
er wird gereist sein	er werde gereist sein
Plural.	Plural.
wir werden gereist sein	wir werden gereist sein
ihr werdet gereist sein	ihr werdet gereist sein
sie werden gereist sein	sie werden gereist sein
CONDITIONAL.	**CONDITIONAL PERFECT.**
Singular.	Singular.
ich würde reisen, I should travel	ich würde gereist sein, I should have travelled
du würdest reisen	du würdest gereist sein
er würde reisen	er würde gereist sein

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Plural.	Plural.
wir würden reisen	wir würden gereist sein
ihr würdet reisen	ihr würdet gereist sein
sie würden reisen	sie würden gereist sein

IMPERATIVE.

Singular. reise, travel (thou)
reise er, let him travel
Plural. reisen wir, let us travel
reiset, travel (you)
reisen sie, let them travel.

§ 5. CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

The German reflective verbs agree with the English, in having their compound tenses formed by haben; the second pronoun may be, according to the nature of the verb, either the accusative or the dative.

1. With the accusative.

Sich trösten, to comfort one's-self.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular. ich tröste mich, I comfort myself
du tröstest dich, thou comfortest thyself
er tröstet sich, he comforts himself
Plural. wir trösten uns, we comfort ourselves
ihr tröstet euch, ye comfort yourselves
sie trösten sich, they comfort themselves

IMPERFECT.

Singular. ich tröstete mich, I comforted myself
du tröstetest dich, thou comfortest thyself
er tröstete sich, he comforted himself
Plural. wir trösteten uns, we comforted ourselves
ihr tröstetet euch, ye comforted yourselves
sie trösteten sich, they comforted themselves

PERFECT.

Singular. ich habe mich getröſtet, I have comforted myself
du haſt dich getröſtet, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Singular. ich hatte mich getröſtet, I had comforted myself
du hatteſt dich getröſtet, &c.

FUTURE.

Singular. ich werde mich tröſten, I shall comfort myself
du wirſt dich tröſten, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular. ich werde mich getröſtet haben, I shall have comforted myself
du wirſt dich getröſtet haben, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular. ich tröſte mich, I may comfort myself
du tröſteſt dich, thou mayest comfort thyself
er tröſte ſich, he may comfort himself

Plural. wir tröſten uns, we may comfort ourselves
ihr tröſtet euch, ye may comfort yourselves
ſie tröſten ſich, they may comfort themselves

IMPERFECT.

Singular. ich tröſtete mich, I might comfort myself
du tröſteteſt dich, thou mightest comfort thyself
er tröſtete ſich, he might comfort himself

Plural. wir tröſteten uns, we might comfort ourselves
ihr tröſtetet euch, ye might comfort yourselves
ſie tröſteten ſich, they might comfort themselves

PERFECT.

Singular. ich habe mich getröſtet, I may have comforted myself
du habeſt dich getröſtet, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Singular. ich hätte mich getröstet, I might have comforted myself
du hättest dich getröstet, &c.

FUTURE.

Singular. ich werde mich trösten, I shall comfort myself
du werdest dich trösten, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular. ich werde mich getröstet haben, I shall have comforted myself
du werdest dich getröstet haben, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

Singular. ich würde mich trösten, I should comfort myself, &c.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

Singular. ich würde mich getröstet haben, I should have comforted myself, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular. tröste dich, comfort thyself
tröste er sich, let him comfort himself

Plural. trösten wir uns, let us comfort ourselves
tröstet euch, comfort yourselves
trösten sie sich, let them comfort themselves

INFINITIVES.

PRES. sich trösten, to comfort one's-self
PRET. sich getröstet haben, to have comforted one's-self

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. sich tröstend, comforting one's-self.

2. With the dative.

Sich schmeicheln, to flatter one's-self.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular. ich schmeichle mir, I flatter myself
du schmeichelst dir
er (sie, es) schmeichelt sich

Plural. wir ſchmeicheln uns, we flatter ourselves
ihr ſchmeichelt euch
ſie ſchmeicheln ſich

IMPERFECT.

Singular. ich ſchmeichelte mir, I flattered myself
du ſchmeicheltest dir
er ſchmeichelte ſich

Plural. wir ſchmeichelten uns
ihr ſchmeicheltet euch
ſie ſchmeichelten ſich

PERFECT.

Singular. ich habe mir geſchmeichelt, I have flattered myself
du haſt dir geſchmeichelt, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Singular. ich hatte mir geſchmeichelt, I had flattered myself
du hatteſt dir geſchmeichelt, &c.

FUTURE.

Singular. ich werde mir ſchmeicheln, I shall flatter myself
du wirſt dir ſchmeicheln, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular. ich werde mir geſchmeichelt haben, I shall have flattered myself
du wirſt dir geſchmeichelt haben, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular. ich ſchmeichele mir, I may flatter myself
du ſchmeicheleſt dir, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Singular. ich ſchmeichelte mir, I might flatter myself
du ſchmeicheltest dir, &c.

PERFECT.

Singular. ich habe mir geſchmeichelt, I may have flattered myself
du habeſt dir geſchmeichelt, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Singular. ich hätte mir geſchmeichelt, I might have flattered myself
du hätteſt dir geſchmeichelt, &c.

FUTURE.

Singular. ich werde mir ſchmeicheln, I shall flatter myself
du werdeſt dir ſchmeicheln, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular. ich werde mir geſchmeichelt haben, I shall have flattered myself
du werdeſt dir geſchmeichelt haben, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

Singular. ich würde mir ſchmeicheln, I should flatter myself
du würdeſt dir ſchmeicheln, &c.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

Singular. ich würde mir geſchmeichelt haben, I should have flattered myself
du würdeſt dir geſchmeichelt haben, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular. ſchmeichle dir, flatter thyself
ſchmeichele er ſich, let him flatter himself

Plural. ſchmeichelen wir uns, let us flatter ourselves
ſchmeichelt euch, flatter yourselves
ſchmeichelen ſie ſich, let them flatter themselves

INFINITIVES.

PRES. ſich ſchmeicheln, to flatter one's-self
PERF. ſich geſchmeichelt haben, to have flattered one's-self

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. ſich ſchmeichelnd, flattering one's-self.

§ 6. CONJUGATION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs, of which only the third person singular can occur, are either conjugated like verbs neuter, or reflective, or active. They have no participle present, nor an imperative.

1. Like a verb neuter.

Hageln, to hail.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
es hagelt, it hails	es hagele, it may hail
IMPERFECT.	
es hagelte, it hailed	es hagelte, it might hail
PERFECT.	
es hat gehagelt, it has hailed	es habe gehagelt, it may have hailed
PLUPERFECT.	
es hatte gehagelt, it had hailed	es hätte gehagelt, it might have hailed
FUTURE.	
es wird hageln, it will hail	es werde hageln, it will hail
FUTURE PERFECT.	
es wird gehagelt haben, it will have hailed	es werde gehagelt haben, it will have hailed

CONDITIONAL.

es würde hageln, it would hail

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

es würde gehagelt haben, it would have hailed.

2. Like a verb reflective.

Sich gebühren, to behove.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
es gebührt sich, it behoves	es gebühre sich, it may behove

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
IMPERFECT.	
es gebührte sich, it behoved	es gebührete sich, it might behove
PERFECT.	
es hat sich gebührt, it has behoved	es habe sich gebührt, it may have behoved
PLUPERFECT.	
es hatte sich gebührt, it had behoved	es hätte sich gebührt, it might have behoved
FUTURE.	
es wird sich gebühren, it shall behove	es werde sich gebühren, it shall behove
FUTURE PERFECT.	
es wird sich gebührt haben, it will have behoved	es werde sich gebührt haben, it will have behoved

CONDITIONAL.

es würde sich gebühren, it would behove

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

es würde sich gebührt haben, it would have behoved

3. Like a verb active.

Aergern, to vex.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
Singular.	Singular.
es ärgert mich, it vexes me	es ärgere mich, it may vex me
es ärgert dich, it vexes thee	es ärgere dich, it may vex thee
es ärgert ihn (sie), it vexes him (her)	es ärgere ihn (sie), it may vex him (her)
Plural.	Plural.
es ärgert uns, it vexes us	es ärgere uns, it may vex us
es ärgert euch, it vexes you	es ärgere euch, it may vex you
es ärgert sie, it vexes them	es ärgere sie, it may vex them

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
IMPERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
es ärgerte mich, dich, ihn, it vexed me, thee, him	es ärgerte mich, dich, ihn, it might vex me, thee, him
Plural.	Plural.
es ärgerte uns, euch, sie, it vexed us, you, them	es ärgerte uns, euch, sie, it might vex us, you, them
PERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
es hat mich, dich, ihn geärgert, it has vexed me, thee, him	es habe mich, dich, ihn geärgert, it may have vexed me, thee, him
Plural.	Plural.
es hat uns, euch, sie geärgert, it has vexed us, you, them	es habe uns, euch, sie geärgert, it may have vexed us, you, them
PLUPERFECT.	
Singular.	Singular.
es hatte mich, dich, ihn geärgert, it had vexed me, thee, him	es hätte mich, dich, ihn geärgert, it might have vexed me, thee, him
Plural.	Plural.
es hatte uns, euch, sie geärgert, it had vexed us, you, them	es hätte uns, euch, sie geärgert, it might have vexed us, you, them
FUTURE.	
Singular.	Singular.
es wird mich, dich, ihn ärgern, it will vex me, thee, him	es werde mich, dich, ihn ärgern, it will vex me, thee, him
Plural.	Plural.
es wird uns, euch, sie ärgern, it will vex us, you, them	es werde uns, euch, sie ärgern, it will vex us, you, them

FUTURE PERFECT.

es wird mich geärgert haben, it will have vexed me, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

es würde mich ärgern, it would vex me, &c.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

es würde mich geärgert haben, it would have vexed me, &c.

§ 7. CONJUGATION OF NOMINALLY IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. Verbs, which in German grammar go by the name of irregular, are thus called, because their conjugation differs from that mentioned in § 2; but, in reality, they are not at all irregular: they follow particular rules, and having a greater variety of terminations, ought therefore to be called verbs of full or strong conjugation.

2. Such strongly conjugated verbs differ from those regularly, or, rather, weakly conjugated, in the following points:—

1. In the second and third persons singular of the present indicative the radical vowel is often modified or changed, as ich schlafe, I sleep, du schläfst, er schläft; ich breche, I break, du brichst, or bricht.

2. In the imperfect indicative the vowel is changed, and the first and third persons singular have no termination, as ich breche, I break; ich brach, I broke; du brachest, er brach, wir brachen, ihr brachet, sie brachen. The imperfect subjunctive is formed from the indicative by a modification of the vowel and the termination e, as ich bräche, I might break, du brächest, er bräche, wir brächen, ihr brächet, sie brächen.

3. In the participle past the termination en is substituted for t, and the vowel often changed, as gebrochen, broken.

4. In the addressed person singular of the imperative, in verbs with the radical vowel e, the termina-

tion of the verb, e, is omitted, and the radical e changed into i, as brich, break (thou).

3. Of simple verbs, thus strongly conjugated, there are about one hundred and eighty in the German language; they are divided into six classes.

The first class contains those in which the radical vowel, either e or i, is changed in imperfect into a, and in participle into u or o.

a. Of those which have the radical vowel i, imperfect a, participle u, there are sixteen:—

binden, to bind
dringen, to press
finden, to find
gelingen, to succeed
klingen, to sound
ringen, to wrestle
schlingen, to sling
schwinden, to vanish
schwingen, to swing
singen, to sing
sinken, to sink
springen, to spring
stinken, to stink
trinken, to drink
winden, to wind
zwingen, to force.

b. Of those verbs, the radical vowel of which, i, is changed into a in imperfect, and into o in participle, there are six:

beginnen, to begin
gewinnen, to win
rinnen, to leak
schwimmen, to swim
sinnen, to meditate
spinnen, to spin.

c. Those with the radical vowel e, imperfect a, and participle o, are twenty-two in number:

befehlen, to command
bergen, to shelter
bersten, to burst
brechen, to break
dreschen, to thrash
empfehlen, to recommend
erschrecken, to get frightened
gebären, to bring forth
gelten, to have a value
helfen, to help
nehmen, to take
schelten, to scold
sprechen, to speak
stechen, to sting
stecken, to stick
stehlen, to steal

ſterben, to die	werben, to sue
treffen, to hit	werden, to become
verderben, to get spoiled	werfen, to throw.

The second class contains verbs with the radical vowel e or i, which is changed in imperfect into a, in participle into e.

a. Those with radical vowel e, imperfect a, participle e, are ten. *b.* Those with the radical vowel i, imperfect a, participle e, are three:

eſſen, to eat	ſehen, to see
freſſen, to eat as an animal	treten, to tread
geben, to give	vergeſſen, to forget
geneſen, to recover	bitten, to beg
geſchehen, to happen	liegen, to lie
leſen, to read	ſitzen, to sit.
meſſen, to measure	

The third class contains verbs with the radical vowel, a, changed into u in imperfect, and unaltered in participle. They are ten in number:

backen, to bake	ſchaffen, to create
fahren, to drive	ſchlagen, to strike
graben, to dig	tragen, to carry
laden, to load	wachſen, to grow
mahlen, to grind	waſchen, to wash.

The fourth class contains thirteen verbs, the radical of which, either a, au, u, or o, is changed into ie in the imperfect, and remains unaltered in participle; they are—

blaſen, to blow	rathen, to advise
braten, to roast	ſchlafen, to sleep
fallen, to fall	hauen, to cut
fangen, to catch	laufen, to run
halten, to hold	rufen, to call
hangen, to hang	ſtoßen, to push.
laſſen, to let	

The fifth class includes thirty-eight verbs; they have ei for a radical vowel, which is changed into i or ie in the imperfect and in the participle.

These are—*a.* twenty-two with i in imperfect and participle:

befleißen, to apply	reißen, to tear
beißen, to bite	reiten, to ride
bleichen, to fade	schleichen, to sneak
gleichen, to equal	schleifen, to sharpen
gleiten, to glide	schleißen, to split
greifen, to seize	schmeißen, to smite
keifen, to quarrel	schneiden, to cut
kneifen / kneipen } to pinch	schreiten, to stride
	streichen, to stroke
leiden, to suffer	streiten, to fight
pfeifen, to whistle	weichen, to yield.

b. Sixteen with ie in imperfect and participle:

bleiben, to remain	schreiben, to write
gedeihen, to thrive	schreien, to scream
leihen, to lend	schweigen, to be silent
meiden, to avoid	speien, to spit
preisen, to praise	steigen, to mount
reiben, to rub	treiben, to drive
scheiden, to separate	weisen, to show
scheinen, to seem	zeihen, to accuse.

Note.—As an exception must be remarked heißen, to bid, which changes the radical vowel in the imperfect into ie, and retains it in the participle.

The sixth class contains many verbs, the radical of which changes into the vowel o in imperfect and participle.

a. Twenty-five with ie or ů, changed into o in imperfect and participle:

biegen, to bend	fliegen, to fly
bieten, to bid	fliehen, to flee

fließen, to flow
frieren, to freeze
genießen, to enjoy
gießen, to pour
kriechen, to creep
küren, to choose
lügen, to lie
riechen, to smell
schieben, to shove
schießen, to shoot
schließen, to shut
schnieben, to snort
sieden, to boil
sprießen, to sprout
stieben, to fly up as dust
triefen, to drip
trügen, to deceive
verdrießen, to annoy
verlieren, to lose
wiegen, to weigh
ziehen, to draw.

b. Four with au as radical vowel, and o in imperfect and participle:

saufen, to drink like an animal
saugen, to suck
schnauben, to snort
schrauben, to screw.

c. Nineteen with the radical vowel i, or e, å, ö, a, and o in imperfect and participle:

glimmen, to glimmer
klimmen, to climb
beklemmen, to oppress
bewegen, to induce
fechten, to fight
heben, to lift
melken, to milk
pflegen, to foster
quellen, to spring
scheren, to shear
schmelzen, to melt
schwellen, to swell
weben, to weave
gähren, to ferment
schwären, to fester
wägen, to weigh
schwören, to swear
löschen, to get extinguished
schallen, to sound.

d. Dingen, to hire, and schinden, to flay, have u in imperfect and participle, instead of o.

Note to *a.*—Many of these verbs have in the second and third persons singular of the indicative present, and in the addressed person singular of the imperative, a form in eu, instead of the usual with the radical vowel; for instance, ich fliege, I fly, du fleugst, er fleugt; imperative, fleug: ich fliehe, I flee, du fleuchst, er fleucht; imperative, fleuch, flee thou. But the antiquated use of such forms is now only allowed to poets.

§ 8. CONJUGATION OF REALLY IRREGULAR VERBS.

Of really irregular verbs there are only a few in the German language; they amount to the number of twenty-one.

1. Kommen, to come: present indicative, ich komme; imperfect, ich kam; participle, gekommen.

2. Gehen, to go: present indicative, ich gehe; imperfect, ich ging; participle, gegangen.

3—8. Kennen, to know; brennen, to burn; nennen, to name; rennen, to run; senden, to send; wenden, to turn; all of which change the radical vowel into a, both in imperfect and participle, and still retain the termination of the weak conjugation; for instance, ich kannte, I knew; gekannt, known. However, senden and wenden are also used without change of vowel, as ich wendete, I turned; gewendet, turned.

9, 10. Bringen, to bring, has in imperfect brachte, and gebracht in participle; and denken, to think, has dachte, gedacht. They are irregular in adopting the terminations of the weak, and the vowel-change of the strong conjugation, besides that they change the radical consonant.

11—17. Dürfen, to dare; können, to be able; mögen, to like; müssen, to be obliged; sollen, to do what another wills (*debere* in Latin, *devoir* in French); wissen, to know; wollen, to have a will (*velle* in Latin, *vouloir* in French). These seven verbs which, partially, are defective in English, can be completely conjugated, but their forms are irregular.

a. Dürfen: present, ich darf, du darfst, er darf, wir dürfen, ihr dürfet, sie dürfen; subjunctive, ich dürfe: imperfect, ich durfte; subjunctive, ich dürfte: participle, gedurft.

b. Können: present, ich kann, du kannst, er kann, wir können, ihr könnet, sie können; subjunctive, ich könne: imperfect, ich konnte; subjunctive, ich könnte: participle, gekonnt.

c. Mögen: present, ich mag, du magst, er mag, wir mögen, &c.;

subjunctive, ich möge: imperfect, ich mochte; subjunctive, ich möchte: participle, gemocht.

d. Müssen: present, ich muß, du mußt, er muß, wir müssen, &c.; subjunctive, ich müsse: imperfect, ich mußte; subjunctive, ich müßte: participle, gemußt.

e. Sollen: present, ich soll, du sollst, er soll, &c.; subjunctive, ich solle: imperfect, indicative and subjunctive, ich sollte: participle, gesollt.

f. Wissen: present, ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wissen, &c.; subjunctive, ich wisse: imperfect, ich wußte; subjunctive, ich wüßte: participle, gewußt.

g. Wollen: present, ich will, du willst, er will, wir wollen, &c.; subjunctive, ich wolle: imperfect, indicative and subjunctive, ich wollte: participle, gewollt.

18. Thun, to do, has in imperfect ich that, and in participle gethan.

19—21. Sein, to be; haben, to have; werden, to become, deviate in many respects from the rules according to which other verbs are conjugated.

a. Sein takes its forms, in the conjugation, from four different roots, bin, ist, war, sein.

b. Haben either rejects the b, as in hast, hat; or it assimilates it to the following t, as in hatte.

c. Werden is irregular in present, rejecting the d in wirst; and in the imperfect form, wurde, by adding the termination e.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Verbs, whether nominally or really irregular, retain their peculiar forms both in derivatives and compounds; for instance, bekommen, to get: present, ich bekomme; imperfect, ich bekam; participle, bekommen. Only willfahren, to comply, is conjugated with the weak or regular forms, as ich willfahrte in imperfect, and gewillfahrt in participle.

2. Many verbs, being derivatives from nouns, of course follow the weak conjugation, as rathschlagen, to consult, which

is not a compound of Rath and schlagen, but a derivative of Rathschlag, consultation, has in imperfect ich rathschlagte, and in participle gerathschlagt: likewise umringen, to surround, not compounded of um and ringen, to wrestle—but derived from Ring, the ring, has in imperfect umringte, and in participle umringt: heirathen, to marry, from Heirath, marriage; imperfect, heirathete; participle, geheirathet: herbergen, from Herberge, the inn; imperfect, herbergte; participle, geherbergt: veranlassen, to occasion, from Anlaß, occasion; imperfect, veranlaßte; participle, veranlaßt: bewillkommen, to welcome, from Willkommen, the welcome; imperfect, bewillkommte; participle, bewillkommt: bemitleiden, to have compassion, from Mitleiden, sympathy; imperfect, bemitleidete; participle, bemitleidet: beauftragen, to commission, from Auftrag, commission; imperfect, beauftragte; participle, beauftragt, &c.

3. A number of verbs, which follow the strong conjugation when they have a neuter meaning, receive the weak forms when they become active verbs. In English it is very frequent to find verbs which are both neuter and active, as *to move*, *to break*, *to drive;* but they are not always conjugated in one way as neuters, and in another way as actives. This is the case in German. But as, in English, the verb neuter sometimes undergoes a change when it becomes active,—for instance, *to lie* and *to lay*, *to sit* and *to seat;* thus, in German, many neuter verbs often suffer a change in the root when they are to have an active meaning: for instance, liegen, to lie; legen, to lay;—sitzen, to sit; setzen, to seat.

The following list contains all verbs which, although of the same root, are used as verbs neuter and active, and, accordingly, either strongly conjugated or with the weak terminations:—

Verbs Neuter.	Verbs Active.
biegen (bog, gebogen), to bend	beugen, to bend
bleichen (blich, geblichen), to fade	bleichen, to bleach
dringen (drang, gedrungen) to press forward	drängen, to press

Verbs Neuter.	Verbs Active.
erſaufen (erſoff, erſoffen), to get drowned	erſäufen, to drown
erſchrecken (erſchrak, erſchrocken), to get frightened	erſchrecken, to frighten
fallen (fiel, gefallen), to fall	fällen, to fell
fließen (floß, gefloſſen), to flow	flößen, to float
hangen (hing, gehangen), to be suspended	hängen, to suspend
liegen (lag, gelegen), to lie	legen, to lay
erlöſchen (erloſch, erloſchen), to be extinguished	löſchen, to extinguish
quellen (quoll, gequollen), to spring	quellen, to soak
ſaugen (ſog, geſogen), to suck	ſäugen, to suckle
ſchmelzen (ſchmolz, geſchmolzen), to melt	ſchmelzen, to melt
ſchweigen (ſchwieg, geſchwiegen), to be silent	ſchweigen, to silence
ſchwellen (ſchwoll, geſchwollen), to swell	ſchwellen, to swell
ſchwimmen (ſchwamm, geſchwommen), to swim	ſchwemmen, to water
ſieden (ſott, geſotten), to boil	ſieden, to boil
ſitzen (ſaß, geſeſſen), to sit	ſetzen, to seat
ſpringen (ſprang, geſprungen), to spring	ſprengen, to blow up
ſtehen (ſtand, geſtanden), to stand	ſtellen, to place
ſtieben (ſtob, geſtoben), to fly up as dust	ſtäuben, to dust
ſinken (ſank, geſunken), to sink	ſenken, to sink
trinken (trank, getrunken), to drink	tränken, to give to drink
verderben (verdarb, verdorben), to get spoiled	verderben, to spoil
verſchwinden (verſchwand, verſchwunden), to disappear	verſchwenden, to squander
weichen (wich, gewichen), to yield	weichen, to soften
wiegen (wog, gewogen), to weigh	wägen, to weigh.

§ 9. LIST OF ALL IRREGULAR VERBS,

Both nominal and real.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
backen, to bake	du bäckst, er bäckt	ich (buk) backte	gebacken	
befehlen, to order	du befiehlst, er befiehlt	ich befahl (*subj.* befähle and beföhle)	befohlen	befiehl
befleißen, to study		ich befliß	beflissen	
beginnen, to begin		ich begann (*subj.* begänne and begönne)	begonnen	
beißen, to bite		ich biß	gebissen	
beklemmen, to oppress			beklemmt (beklommen)[1]	
bergen, to shelter	du birgst, er birgt	ich barg	geborgen	birg
bersten, to burst	du berstest and birstest, er berstet and birst	ich borst and barst	geborsten	birst and berste
betrügen, to deceive		ich betrog	betrogen	
bewegen[2], to induce		ich bewog	bewogen	
biegen, to bend		ich bog	gebogen	
bieten, to offer	(*poet.* du beutst, er beut)	ich bot	geboten	(*poet.* beut)
binden, to tie		ich band	gebunden	
bitten, to request		ich bat	gebeten	
blasen, to blow	du bläsest, er bläst	ich blies	geblasen	
bleiben, to remain		ich blieb	geblieben	
bleichen[3], to fade		ich blich	geblichen	

[1] Beklommen is only used as an adjective.

[2] Bewegen, irregular with the signification *to induce*, regular when denoting *motion*.

[3] Bleichen when active, *to bleach*, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
braten, to roast	du bratest (brâtst), er bratet(brât)	ich bratete (briet)	gebraten	
brechen, to break	du brichst, er bricht	ich brach	gebrochen	brich
brennen, to burn		ich brannte (*subj.*brennete)	gebrannt	
bringen, to bring		ich brachte(*subj.* brächte)	gebracht	
denken, to think		ich dachte (*subj.* dächte)	gedacht	
dingen, to hire		ichdung(dingte)	gedungen	
dreschen, to thrash	du drischest, er drischt	ich drosch	gedroschen	drisch
dringen, to penetrate		ich drang	gedrungen	
dûrfen, to need	ich darf, du darfst, er darf	ich durfte (*subj.* dûrfte)	gedurft	
empfehlen, to recommend	du empfiehlst, er empfiehlt	ich empfahl (*subj.* empfähle and empföhle)	empfohlen	empfiehl
erbleichen, to turn pale		ich erblich	erblichen	
erkûren, to elect		ich erkor	erkoren	
erlöschen, to expire	du erlischest, er erlischt	ich erlosch	erloschen	erlisch
erschallen, to sound		es erscholl	erschollen	
erschrecken, to be frightened	du erschrickst, er erschrickt	ich erschrak	erschrocken	erschrick
essen, to eat	du issest, er ißt	ich aß	gegessen	iß
fahren, to drive	du fährst, er fährt	ich fuhr	gefahren	
fallen, to fall	du fällst, er fällt	ich fiel	gefallen	
fangen, to catch	du fängst, er fängt	ich fing	gefangen	
fechten, to fight	du fichst, er ficht	ich focht	gefochten	ficht
finden, to find		ich fand	gefunden	
flechten, to twist	du flichst and flichtst, er flicht	ich flocht	geflochten	flicht
fliegen, to fly like a bird	(du fleugst, er fleugt, *poet.*)	ich flog	geflogen	fliege(*poet* fleug)

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
fliehen, to fly, to run away	(du fleuchst, er fleucht, *poet.*)	ich floh	geflohen	fliehe (*poet.* fleuch)
fließen, to flow	(du fleußest er fleußt, *poet.*)	ich floß	geflossen	fließe (*poet.* fleuß)
fressen, to eat as a beast	du frissest, er frißt	ich fraß	gefressen	friß
frieren, to freeze		ich fror	gefroren	
gähren, to ferment		ich gohr	gegohren	
gebären, to bring forth	du gebierst (gebärst), sie gebiert (gebärt)	ich gebar	geboren	gebäre (gebier)
geben, to give	du giebst, er giebt	ich gab	gegeben	gieb
gedeihen, to thrive		ich gedieh	gediehen	
gehen, to go		ich ging	gegangen	
gelingen, to succeed		es gelang	gelungen	
gelten, to be worth	du giltst, er gilt	ich galt	gegolten	gilt
genesen, to recover		ich genas	genesen	
genießen, to enjoy		ich genoß	genossen	
geschehen, to happen	es geschieht	es geschah	geschehen	geschieh (es geschehe)
gewinnen, to gain		ich gewann (*subj.* gewänne and gewönne)	gewonnen	
gießen, to pour	(du geußest, er geußt, *poet.*)	ich goß	gegossen	gieße (geuß *poet.*)
gleichen, to resemble		ich glich	geglichen	
gleiten, to slip		ich glitt (*subj.* glitte & gleitete)	geglitten	
glimmen, to glimmer		ich glomm and glimmte	geglommen geglimmt	
graben, to dig	du gräbst, er gräbt	ich grub	gegraben	
greifen, to seize		ich griff	gegriffen	
haben, to have	du hast, er hat	ich hatte	gehabt	

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
halten, to hold	du hältst, er hält	ich hielt	gehalten	
hangen, to hang	du hängst, er hängt	ich hing	gehangen	
hauen, to cut		ich hieb	gehauen	
heben, to heave		ich hob (hub), (*subj.* höbe and hübe)	gehoben	
heißen, to bid		ich hieß	geheißen	
helfen, to help	du hilfst, er hilft	ich half (*subj.* hälfe & hülfe)	geholfen	hilf
keifen, to scold		ich kiff	gekiffen	
kennen, to know		ich kannte (*subj.* kennete)	gekannt	
klieben, to cleave		ich klob	gekloben	
klimmen, to climb		ich klomm (klimmte)	geklommen	
klingen, to sound		ich klang	geklungen	
kneifen, to gripe		ich kniff	gekniffen	
kneipen, to pinch		ich knipp and kneipte	geknippen & gekneipt	
kommen, to come	du kommst, er kommt (du kömmst, er kömmt)	ich kam	gekommen	
können, to be able	ich kann, du kannst, er kann	ich konnte (*subj.* könnte)	gekonnt	
kriechen, to creep	(du kreuchst, er kreucht, *poet.*)	ich kroch	gekrochen	krieche (kreuch *poet.*)
küren, to choose		ich kor	gekoren	
laden, to load	du ladest (lädst), er ladet (lädt)	ich lud (ladete)	geladen	
lassen, to let	du lässest, er läßt	ich ließ	gelassen	
laufen, to run	du läufst, er läuft	ich lief	gelaufen	
leiden, to suffer		ich litt	gelitten	
leihen, to lend		ich lieh	geliehen	

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
lesen, to read	du liest, er liest	ich las	gelesen	lies
liegen, to lie		ich lag	gelegen	
löschen [4], to go out	du lischest, er lischt, (du löschest, er löscht)	ich losch	geloschen	lisch
lügen, to tell a lie		ich log	gelogen	
mahlen [5], to grind		ich (muhl) mahlte	gemahlen	
meiden, to avoid		ich mied	gemieden	
melken, to milk	du melkst, er melkt, (du milkst, er milkt)	ich molk, melkte	gemolken, gemelkt	melke (milk)
messen, to measure	du missest, er mißt	ich maß	gemessen	miß
mögen, to like	ich mag, du magst, er mag	ich mochte (*subj.* möchte)	gemocht	
müssen, to be obliged	ich muß, du mußt, er muß	ich mußte (*subj.* müßte)	gemußt	
nehmen, to take	du nimmst, er nimmt	ich nahm	genommen	nimm
nennen, to call		ich nannte (*subj.* nennete)	genannt	
pfeifen, to whistle		ich pfiff	gepfiffen	
pflegen [6], to foster		ich pflog	gepflogen	
preisen, to praise		ich pries	gepriesen	
quellen, to spring	du quillst, er quillt	ich quoll	gequollen	quill
rathen, to advise	du räthst, er räth	ich rieth	gerathen	
reiben, to rub		ich rieb	gerieben	
reißen, to tear		ich riß	gerissen	
reiten, to ride		ich ritt	geritten	

[4] Löschen when active, *to extinguish*, is regular.

[5] Malen, *to paint*, is regular.

[6] Pflegen is irregular in a few phrases, as des Rathes, der Freundschaft, else it is regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
rennen, to run		ich rannte (*subj.* rennete)	gerannt	
riechen, to smell		ich roch	gerochen	
ringen, to wrestle		ich rang	gerungen	
rinnen, to leak		ich rann (*subj.* rânne & rônne)	geronnen	
rufen, to call		ich rief (rufte)	gerufen (geruft)	
salzen, to salt			gesalzen	
saufen, to drink as animals	du sâufst, er sâuft	ich soff	gesoffen	
saugen, to suck		ich sog	gesogen	
schaffen [7], to create		ich schuf	geschaffen	
schallen, to sound		es scholl (schallte)	geschollen (geschallt)	
scheiden, to separate		ich schied	geschieden	
scheinen, to seem		ich schien	geschienen	
schelten, to rebuke	du schilst, er schilt	ich schalt (*subj.* schâlte and schôlte)	gescholten	schilt
scheren, to shear	du schierst, er schiert	ich schor	geschoren	schier
schieben, to shove		ich schob	geschoben	
schießen, to shoot		ich schoß	geschossen	
schinden, to flay		ich schund	geschunden	
schlafen, to sleep	du schlâfst, er schlâft	ich schlief	geschlafen	
schlagen, to beat	du schlâgst, er schlâgt	ich schlug	geschlagen	
schleichen, to sneak		ich schlich	geschlichen	
schleifen [8], to sharpen		ich schliff	geschliffen	

[7] Schaffen is only irregular with this signification; but when meaning *to procure*, it is regular.

[8] Schleifen, when meaning *to drag, to sling*, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
schleißen, to split		ich schliß	geschlissen	
schließen, to lock	(du schleußest, er schleußt, *poet.*)	ich schloß	geschlossen	schließe (schleuß, *poet.*)
schlingen, to sling		ich schlang	geschlungen	
schmeißen, to throw		ich schmiß	geschmissen	
schmelzen [9], to melt	du schmilzest, er schmilzt	ich schmolz	geschmolzen	schmilz
schnauben, to snort		ich schnob, schnaubte	geschnoben geschnaubt	
schneiden, to cut		ich schnitt	geschnitten	
schnieben, to snort		ich schnob	geschnoben	
schrauben, to screw		ich schrob	geschroben	
schreiben, to write		ich schrieb	geschrieben	
schreien, to cry out		ich schrie	geschrien	
schreiten, to stride		ich schritt	geschritten	
schwären, to fester		ich schwor	geschworen	
schweigen, to be silent		ich schwieg	geschwiegen	
schwellen, to swell	du schwillst, er schwillt	ich schwoll	geschwollen	schwill
schwimmen, to swim		ich schwamm (*subj.* schwämme & schwömme)	geschwommen	
schwinden, to vanish		ich schwand	geschwunden	
schwingen, to swing		ich schwang (schwung, *subj.* schwänge and schwünge)	geschwungen	
schwören, to take an oath		ich schwor (schwur, *subj.* schwüre)	geschworen	

[9] Schmelzen is irregular as verb neuter, but regular as verb active.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
ſehen, to see	du ſiehſt, er ſieht	ich ſah	geſehen	ſieh (ſiehe)
ſein, to be	ich bin, &c.	ich war, &c.	geweſen	ſei
ſenden, to send		ich ſandte (*indic.* also and *subj.* ſendete)	geſandt (geſendet)	
ſieden, to boil		ich ſott	geſotten	
ſingen, to sing		ich ſang	geſungen	
ſinken, to sink		ich ſank	geſunken	
ſinnen, to meditate		ich ſann (*subj.* ſänne & ſönne)	geſonnen	
ſitzen, to sit		ich ſaß	geſeſſen	
ſollen, to be obliged	ich ſoll, du ſollſt er ſoll	ich ſollte	geſollt	
ſpalten, to split			geſpaltet & geſpalten	
ſpeien, to spit		ich ſpie	geſpien	
ſpinnen, to spin		ich ſpann (*subj.* ſpänne and ſpönne)	geſponnen	
ſpleißen, to split		ich ſpliß	geſpliſſen	
ſprechen, to speak	du ſprichſt, er ſpricht	ich ſprach	geſprochen	ſprich
ſprießen, to sprout		ich ſproß	geſproſſen	
ſpringen, to leap		ich ſprang	geſprungen	
ſtechen, to prickle	du ſtichſt, er ſt	ich ſtach	geſtochen	ſtich
ſtecken, to stick		ich ſteckte (ſtak[1])		
ſtehen, to stand		ich ſtand (*subj.* ſtände & ſtünde)	geſtanden	
ſtehlen, to steal	du ſtiehlſt, er ſtiehlt	ich ſtahl (*subj.* ſtähle & ſtöhle)	geſtohlen	ſtiehl
ſteigen, to mount		ich ſtieg	geſtiegen	
ſterben, to die	du ſtirbſt, er ſtirbt	ich ſtarb (*subj.* ſtärbe & ſtürbe)	geſtorben	ſtirb
ſtieben, to fly about like dust		es ſtob	geſtoben	
ſtinken, to stink		ich ſtank	geſtunken	

[1] The form ſtak is only used when ſtecken is a verb neuter.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
ſtoßen, to push	du ſtößeſt, er ſtößt	ich ſtieß	geſtoßen	
ſtreichen, to stroke		ch ſtrich	geſtrichen	
ſtreiten, to combat		ich ſtritt	geſtritten	
thun, to do		ich that	gethan	
tragen, to carry	du trâgſt, er trâgt	ich trug	getragen	
treffen, to hit	du triffſt, er trifft	ich traf	getroffen	triff
treiben, to drive		ich trieb	getrieben	
treten, to tread	du trittſt, er tritt	ich trat	getreten	tritt
triefen, to trickle	(treufſt, treuft *poet.*)	ich troff(triefte)	getroffen (getrieft)	triefe(treuf *poet.*)
trinken, to drink		ich trank	getrunken	
trûgen(triegen), to deceive	(treugſt, treugt *poet.*)	ich trog	getrogen	
verbleichen, to fade		ich verblich	verblichen	
verderben, to spoil	du verdirbſt, er verdirbt	ich verdarb [2] (*subj.* verdûrbe)	verdorben [2]	verdirb
verdrießen, to vex	(verdreußeſt, verdreußt, *poet.*)	es verdroß	verdroſſen	
vergeſſen, to forget	du vergiſſeſt, er vergißt	ich vergaß	vergeſſen	vergiß
verhehlen, to conceal			verhehlt & verhohlen [3]	
verlieren, to lose		ich verlor	verloren	
verlöſchen, to go out	du verliſcheſt, er verliſcht (verlöſcheſt, verlöſcht)	ich verloſch	verloſchen	verliſch (verlöſche)
verwirren, to confound			verwirrt & verworren	
wachſen, to grow	du wâchſeſt, er wâchſt	ich wuchs	gewachſen	

[2] These forms are also regular when verderben is active.
[3] Verhohlen is only used in the derivative unverhohlen.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIP.	IMPERAT.
wägen [4] or wiegen, to weigh		ich wog	gewogen	
waſchen, to wash	du wäſcheſt, er wäſcht	ich wuſch	gewaſchen	
weichen, to yield		ich wich	gewichen	
weiſen, to show		ich wies	gewieſen	
wenden, to turn		ich wandte and wendete	gewandt & gewendet	
werben, to sue	du wirbſt, er wirbt	ich warb	geworben	wirb
werden, to become	du wirſt, er wird	ich wurde and ward	geworden	
werfen, to throw	du wirfſt, er wirft	ich warf (*subj.* wärfe & würfe)	geworfen	wirf
winden, to wind		ich wand	gewunden	
wiſſen, to know	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß	ich wußte (*subj.* wüßte)	gewußt	
wollen, to be inclined	ich will, du willſt, er will	ich wollte	gewollt	
zeihen, to accuse		ich zieh	geziehen	
ziehen, to draw	(zeuchſt, zeucht *poet.*)	ich zog	gezogen	ziehe (zeuch *poet.*)
zwingen, to oblige		ich zwang	gezwungen	

[4] Wägen, as a verb active, is regular.

§ 10. OF COMPOUNDED VERBS, SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

1. A great number of German verbs are compounded of simple verbs and some other word, either a particle, noun, or prefix: for instance, in gutſagen, to give bail; anſagen to announce; verſagen, to refuse, the simple verb ſagen is compounded with the adjective gut, the preposition an, and the prefix ver.

2. Verbs, thus compounded, either always remain

joined with the other component parts or are separated from them: in the first case, they are called inseparable; in the second, separable.

3. Compounded verbs are inseparable when the other component part is—

a. One of the following seven prefixes—be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, zer.

b. The preposition wider, against; and the prefix miß.

c. A noun substantive or adjective, when so united to a verb that both component parts together convey a meaning, which was not implied by either of the two when separate; for instance, handhaben, to handle; luſtwandeln, to promenade; muthmaßen, to conjecture; willfahren, to comply with; weiſſagen, to prophesy; rechtfertigen, to justify.

4. Inseparable verbs are conjugated as if they were simple verbs, only the ge in the participle is omitted; for instance, verſagen,—present, ich verſage; imperfect, ich verſagte; participle, verſagt.

Obs. 1. The ge is retained, however, in compounds with substantives and adjectives; for instance, handhaben, to handle, gehandhabt; wahrſagen, to prophesy, gewahrſagt.

Obs. 2. In compounds with the prefix miß, the ge is omitted when the verbs are neuter, as mißglücken, to miscarry, mißglückt; mißlingen, to fail, mißlungen; mißrathen, to miscarry, mißrathen. When the verbs are active, the ge can either be retained or left out; for instance, mißhandeln, to ill-treat, gemißhandelt and mißhandelt; mißbrauchen, to abuse, gemißbraucht and mißbraucht.

5. In all cases, not mentioned in 3, compounded verbs are separable; for instance with an adverb, as fortſchicken, to send away.

6. The separation never takes place in the infini-

tive and participle present; in the other tenses and moods the separation is effected in two ways:

a. By putting the compound of the verb at the end of the sentence: this is done in the present, imperfect, and imperative; for instance, fortſchicken, to send away—present, ich ſchicke fort; imperfect, ich ſchickte fort; imperative, ſchicke fort.

b. By inserting in the participle past the ge, and in the infinitive preceded by zu—this zu between the two component parts, as fort ge ſchickt, sent away; fort zu ſchicken, to send away.

7. Verbs compounded with the prepositions durch, through; hinter, behind; über, over; um, around; unter, under; the adverb wieder, again; and the qualitative adverb voll, full, are (*a*) either separable or (*b*) inseparable.—*a.* They are separable when the stress lies on the particles, and when these particles give to the meaning of the verb its chief character; for instance, gießen, to pour, du'rchgießen, to pour *through;* ü'berlaufen, to run *over;* hi'nterlegen, to lay *behind;* u'mwerfen, to throw *around;* u'nterſinken, to sink *under;* wie'derbringen, to bring *back again;* vo'llgießen, to *fill* (to pour *full*); the present of these verbs is—ich gieße du'rch, I pour through; es lä'uft über, it runs over; ich lege hi'nter, I lay behind; ich werfe u'm, I throw around; ich ſinke u'nter, I sink under; ich bringe wie'der, I bring back again; ich gieße vo'll, I pour full.

b. They are inseparable when the peculiar meaning of the particle is lost, and the stress therefore falls on the verb; the particles then take the character of prefixes, and the whole meaning of the compounded verb is entirely modified from the original signification: for instance, durchſu'chen does not mean "to seek *through,*" but "to search every where;" uma'rmen, not

"to throw arms around," but "to embrace, to kiss;" unterne'hmen, not "to take a thing from underneath," but "to undertake;" überse'tzen, not "to put over," but "to translate;" hinterge'hen, not "to go behind," but "to deceive;" volle'nden, not "to make a full end," but "to complete." The ge of the participle is, of course, omitted (vid. 4), as durchsu'cht, uma'rmt, unterno'mmen, überse'tzt, hinterga'ngen.

8. If a simple verb is compounded with two particles, the composition can be formed in two ways: (*a*) both particles are united, and form one, such as herab, umher, zurück, herum, hinweg, hinzu, einher, umher, &c., and this compounded particle is joined to a verb; for instance, herab=fallen, to fall down; umher=reisen, to travel about; zurück=kehren, to turn back; herum=gehen, to go round; hinweg=schicken, to send away; hinzu=setzen, to add; einher=schreiten, to stride along; umhin=können, to avoid: or (*b*) one of the particles belonged to an inseparably compounded verb, to which another particle is affixed; for instance, an=erkennen, to acknowledge; ab=verdienen, to gain off; vor=enthalten, to keep from. In the first case, the compound particle is separated; in the second case, the first only is separated: for instance, ich falle herab, I fall down; ich laufe umher, I run about; ich kehre zurück, I turn back; but, ich erkenne an, I acknowledge; ich verdiene ab, I gain off; ich enthalte vor, I keep from.

OBSERVATION.

Verbs like vera'bscheuen, to detest; beo'bachten, to observe; beu'nruhigen, to disturb; veru'neinigen, to disunite; veru'rsachen, to occasion; bea'ntworten, to answer, are not compounds of verbs with two prefixes, since there are no such verbs as ruhigen, sachen, worten; but they are formed from derived

nouns, A'bscheu, O'bacht, u'nruhig, u'neinig, U'rsache, A'ntwort, with one prefix, ver, be. It therefore follows that, in the conjugation, the second prefixes, ab, ob, un, ur, ant, cannot be separated from the roots Scheu, Acht, Ruh, ein, Sache, Wort, to which they were before joined; and since the first prefixes are inseparable, all such verbs must, of course, be inseparable. The participles for instance, would sound—vera'bscheut, beo'bachtet, beu'nruhigt, veru'neinigt, veru'rsacht, bea'ntwortet.

SECTION IV.—ON ADVERBS.

CHAP. I. ON THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF ADVERBS.

§ 1. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

a. To the question wo? where? the answer can be given by means of the following adverbs:

hier, here
da, dort } there, yonder
hierin, in here
innen, drinnen } within
außen, draußen } without
diesseits, hüben } on this side
jenseits, drüben } on that side
oben, droben } above
unten, drunten } below
hinten, behind
vorn, before
daheim, at home
auswärts, abroad
anderswo, anderweitig } somewhere else
irgendwo, somewhere
nirgends, nowhere
nahe, near
fern, far off
mitten, in the middle
allenthalben, überall } everywhere
unterweges, on the way
rechts, on the right
links, on the left
quer, across
auswendig, externally
inwendig, internally
umher, about.

b. The question wohin? where to? can be answered by the following adverbs:

her, hierher } hither
hin, dahin, dorthin } thither
heraus, hinaus } out
herein, hinein } in, into
herauf, hinauf } up
herunter, hinunter } down
heran, hinan } on, near
herum, hinum } round
zurück, back
herbei, herzu } hither, near
hinweg, weg } away
herab, hinab } down
hinzu, to, thither
rückwärts, backward
hernieder, down
hervor, forth
hin und her (wieder), to and fro
ein und aus, in and out
auf, an } und nieder — ab { up, down } and
heimwärts, homeward
herüber, hinüber } over to.

c. The question woher? whence? can be answered by the adverbs

daher, dorther } thence
von hier, von hinnen } hence
hiervon, from this
davon, from that
von—aus, from out.

d. The question wodurch? where through? may be answered by

hierdurch, here through | dadurch, there through.

§ 2. ADVERBS OF TIME.

a. For the present and indefinite time:

nun, jetzt } now
jederzeit, at all times
noch, still

je, jemals } ever
ſtets, immer, immerdar } always
nie, nimmer } never
nimmermehr, never and never
zuvôrderſt, for the first
anfangs, at first
zuweilen, bisweilen } sometimes
frûh, early
ſpât, late
bald, soon
erſt, at first
ſtracks, immediately
augenblicklich, momentarily
zeither, since, hitherto
heute, to-day
diesmal, this time
ſchon, already
bisher, till now
bisjetzt, until now
gegenwârtig, at present
ſogleich, directly
bereits, already
flugs, speedily
plôtzlich, suddenly
hurtig, ſchnell, raſch } quickly.

b. For the past:

geſtern, yesterday
vorgeſtern, the day before yesterday
neulich, jüngſt, kürzlich, neuerdings } lately
unlângſt, not long ago
damals, then
vorlângſt, long ago
ehedem, ſonſt, vordem, weiland, vorzeiten, ehemals, vormals, vorher, zuvor } formerly.

c. For the future:

einſt, dereinſt } once
nâchſtens, next
letztens, lastly
zuletzt, at last
morgen, to-morrow
ferner, further
übermorgen, a day after to-morrow
dann, ſodann } then
endlich, at last
nachher, hernach } afterwards

dann und wann, now and then
künftig—hin } in future
hinfort

späterhin, at a later period
von nun an, from now hence.

§ 3. ADVERBS OF NUMBER AND ORDER.

Erstens, zum ersten, erstlich, in the first place; zweitens, zum zweiten, secondly; drittens, in the third place; letztens, lastly; ferner, further; einmal, once; zweimal, twice; einzeln, one by one, singly; allerseits, mit einander, insgesammt, sämmtlich, zusammen, allesammt, sammt und sonders, altogether; hauptsächlich, chiefly; abermal or abermals, once more; von neuem, anew; durchgängig, in every respect; durchgehends, throughout; stückweise, by pieces; theils, partly; zum Theil, in part.

§ 4. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY AND INTENSITY.

Genug, enough; wenig, little; reichlich, überflüssig, abundantly; fast, schier, beinahe, nearly, almost; schwerlich, kaum, hardly, scarcely; nur, allein, only, but; wenigstens, at least; sehr, very; gänzlich, entirely; ziemlich, tolerably; viel, much; zu viel, too much; mehr, more; weniger, less; zur Genüge, sufficiently; überaus, ungemein, exceedingly; besonders, particularly; ausnehmend, uncommonly; äußerst, extremely; gar, very; sogar, even; gar nichts, nothing at all; ganz, quite; bei weitem, by far; völlig, completely; vollends, fully; zumal, especially; selbst, even; gern, with pleasure; lieber, rather; anders, otherwise; gleichsam, as it were; gleichfalls, likewise; sonst, else; als, than; wie, as; so wie, gleich wie, just as; gleich, alike; also, thus; auch, also; je—je, je—um so, je—desto, the—the; einigermaßen, in some measure; genau, exactly; so fern, so far; eigentlich, really.

§ 5. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION.

Wo? where? wenn, wann? when? wie? how? woher? whence? von wannen (*poet.*)? from whence? warum (*poet.* was)? why? wohin? where to? wodurch? by what means? weswegen? for what reason? weshalb? on what account? wofür? for what? womit? with what? worin? wherein? woraus? where out? worüber? about what? nicht wahr? not so?

§ 6. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION AND NEGATION.

Ja, yes; gewiß, fürwahr, wahrlich, certainly, truly; freilich, ja wohl, to be sure; allerdings, of course; wirklich, really; unstreitig, no doubt; sicherlich, surely; jedenfalls, at all events; immerhin, well and good; ja doch, yes, yes; vielleicht, etwa, perhaps; ungefähr, perchance; ohne Zweifel, undoubtedly; nun ja, yes, truly; nein, no; nicht, not; mit nichten, keinesweges, ja nicht, durchaus nicht, by no means; so gar, even; gar nicht, not at all; traun, forsooth; in der That, indeed; wahrscheinlich, vermuthlich, probably; allenfalls, in case of need; durchaus, absolutely.

CHAP. II.—ON THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs implying a quality, when derived from adjectives, can form degrees of comparison exactly like adjectives, with the termination er for the comparative, and st for the superlative; for instance, lang, länger, längst. However, small is the number of adverbs which form their superlative in this simple way; they are—höchst, in the highest degree; äußerst, in the utmost degree; nächst, next; jüngst, lately; längst, long ago; meist, mostly; baldigst, as soon as possible; innigst, inmost; freundlichst, in the most

friendly way; höflichſt, very courteously; gehorſamſt, most obediently; unterthänigſt, most subjectedly; gefälligſt, in the most complaisant way; gütigſt, in the kindest manner; eiligſt, in greatest haste; möglichſt, in the most possible way; höchlichſt, in the highest degree; ergebenſt, in the most devoted way. Generally the superlative of adverbs is formed by adding ens to the superlative form, as höchſtens, meiſtens, längſtens, ſchönſtens, beſtens, &c.; or by means of prepositions: (1) of zu with the superlative, as zuerſt, first; zuletzt, last; zunächſt, next; zumeiſt, most; zuvörderſt, first of all: (2) with am (a compound of the preposition an and dem, the definite article neuter) and the dative of the superlative, as am ſchönſten, in the finest way: and (3) with aufs (a compound of the preposition auf and the article das) and the accusative of the superlative, as aufs ſchönſte, in the most beautiful manner.

Obs. The degrees of comparison of bald, soon, gern, willingly, are formed from the roots ehe and lieb: namely,

bald	compar. eher	superl. eheſt
gern	compar. lieber	superl. liebſt.

SECTION V.—ON THE UNCHANGEABLE PARTS OF SPEECH, PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, AND INTERJECTIONS.

CHAP. I.—ON PREPOSITIONS.

The German language has the following fifty prepositions:—

an, on—D. and A.
anſtatt or ſtatt, instead of—G.
auf, upon—D. and A.
aus, out of—D.
außer, except—D.
außerhalb, without—G.
innerhalb, within—G.
oberhalb, above—G.

unterhalb, below—G.
bei, near by—D.
binnen, within (the time of) —D.
diesseit or diesseits, on this side —G.
jenseit or jenseits, on that side —G.
durch, through—A.
entgegen, adverse—D.
für, for—A.
gegen, against—A.
gegenüber, opposite—D.
halb, halben, halber } for the sake of—G.
in, in—D. and A.
kraft, by authority—G.
längs, along—G. and D.
laut, according—G. and D.
mit, with—D.
mittels or mittelst, vermittelst } by means of—G.
nach, after—D.
nächst, zunächst } next—D.
neben, near—D. and A.
nebst, sammt } together with—D.
ohne, without—A.
seit, since—D.
sonder, without—A.
trotz, in spite of—G. and D.
über, over—D. and A.
unter, under—D. and A.
um, around—A.
um—willen, for the sake of —G.
ungeachtet, notwithstanding—G.
unweit, not far from—G.
vermöge, by the power of—G.
von, from—D.
vor, before—D. and A.
während, during—G.
wegen, on account of—G.
wider, against—A.
zu, to—D.
zufolge, according to—G. and D.
zuwider, contrary to—D.
zwischen, between—D. and A.

CHAP. II.—ON CONJUNCTIONS.

The following alphabetical list contains the conjunctions to be found in the German language:—

als, when
also, so, thus
auch, also
auf daß, in order that
bevor, before
bis, until
da, when
daher, therefore
dafern, in case that
damit, in order that

dann, alsdann } then, afterwards
daß, that
dessenungeachtet, dennoch } still, notwithstanding
denn, for (*nam*, Latin)
deshalb, deswegen } on that account
dieweil, because
doch, jedoch } yet, however
entweder, oder } either, or
Falls, im Falle } in case that
ferner, further
folglich, consequently
gleichwohl, however
hingegen, on the other hand
ja, yes
je—je, je—desto } the—the
indem, whilst
indeß, indessen } in the mean time, however
ingleichen, likewise
mithin, consequently
nachdem, after
nämlich, namely
nicht allein, not only
nicht nur, not only
noch, nor
nun, now
ob, if, whether
obgleich, obschon, obwohl } though
oder, or
seit, seitdem } since
so, so
sondern, but
sonst, else
überdieß, moreover
übrigens, besides
und, and
ungeachtet, though
während, whilst
weder, neither
weil, because
wenn, if
wenn gleich, wenn auch, wenn schon } though
wie, as, how
wiewohl, although
wo, where
wohl, well
zwar, it is true.

CHAP. III.—ON INTERJECTIONS.

The following are the chief interjections of the German language:—

1. For admiration, or astonishment and hesitation: o! ei! haha! hoho! hum! aha!—potz! potztausend! ei der Tausend! alle Welt! zounds!—Blitz! potz Blitz! Donner! Donnerwetter! Hagel! alle Hagel, Element! sapperlot or sackerlot! zounds!—Henker! der Kukuk! bewahre! behüte! God forbid!

2. For aversion: pfui! fye!—weg! begone! bah!—hu! hu! boo!

3. For grief and sorrow, or pain: ach! alas!—weh! wehe! woe!—leider! unfortunately!—ach Gott! O God!

4. For exhortation and threat: wohlan! well then!—auf, auf! up, up!—lustig! merry!—getrost! courage!—brav! brave!—na! be sure!—nanu! ei, ei!

5. For a call: holla! he! heda! bst or pst! halt! höre! I say!

6. For silencing: st! husch! scht! still, hush!

7. For mirth: hahaha! hihihi! heisa! juchei! eia! hurrah! sa, sa!

8. For rapidity: hui! im Hui! instantly!—apropos! what I wished to say!

9. For imitation of sound: bang! plang! pardang! plump! bounce!—platsch! patsch! plash! splash!—klipp-klapp! flip-flap!—hopp, hopp! hop!—holter-polter! (expressing a rumbling noise)—klaps! tap!—schwupp, schwapp! slap, smack!—ripps, rapps! catch, snatch!—stripp strapp strull! stand still! (used in milking)—husch! hush!—miau! (imitating a cat)—mies, mies! (for calling a cat)—put, put! (for calling fowls), &c.

PART II.

ON THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

CHAP. I.—ON THE ROOTS OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE COMPARED TO THOSE OF THE ENGLISH.

1. The number of words, as now comprised in the German language, amounts to about 200,000. Such a treasure of words is found in no other modern language; not even in the richest of the dead ones—the Greek. The German tongue owes this great possession to its inherent creative power, by the use of which it is enabled constantly to add to its riches. For, in reality, the whole stock of German words contains only 600 roots, and from them all the rest are formed either by derivation or composition. Those, therefore, who wish to acquire a comprehensive knowledge of the meaning of German words, have only a twofold task to perform: first, to make themselves acquainted with the laws according to which new words are both formed and fixed in their signification. These laws will be explained in this, the second part of the grammar. Secondly, they must learn the signification of the 600 elementary words, or roots of the German language—a very easy matter to the English student, since the greatest number of those 600 roots are also forming the foundation of the English tongue.

2. Many words are (*a*) actually the same in both languages; for instance, Hand, Land, Sand, Nest, Finger, Wind, Wolf, Gold, Butter: or (*b*) they are alike in sound, and vary in the spelling, as Fischer, fisher; Haus, house; Glas, glass; Gras, grass; Busch, bush; Ochs, ox; Bär, bear; Schein, shine, &c.: or (*c*) they exist in one of the two languages as roots, whilst in the other as derivatives; for instance, leave, Urlaub (= Erlaub); enough, genug; ready, bereit; hinten, behind; link, Gelenk; Haß, hatred; oft, often, &c.

3. The greatest number of words, however, in the two languages differ—I. either in their vowels; or II., in a consonant.

I. As to the difference in the vowels, it may be remarked:

a. That the German au and the English *ou* were originally *u*. Now, this old vowel is found in many words of the one language, whilst the modernised au and *ou* occur in the corresponding words of the other language; for instance, du, thou; Grund, ground; rund, round; Pfund, pound, &c.; plum, Pflaume; blue, blau; thumb, Daum; scum, Schaum; up, auf, &c.

b. The German au certainly corresponds to the English *ou*, and the ei to the English long *ī* in many words, as sauer, sour; Maus, mouse; tausend, thousand; weise, wise; Seite, side; weit, wide, &c.

c. But the German au and ei often correspond to the English *ea*, as Traum, dream; berauben, to bereave; Haufen, heap; taub, deaf, &c.; Scheide, sheath; leiten, to lead; bleichen, to bleach; Weizen, wheat, &c.

d. The German ei is in many English corresponding words an *o*, as Stein, stone; Bein, bone; Geist, ghost; heiß, hot; heim, home; allein, alone.

II. As to the difference in point of consonants, it must be repeated from general grammar, that all consonants are divided into two classes: (1) *liquids*, l, m, n, r, s; and (2) *mutes*, which contain all the others. The mutes are divided, in reference to the organ by means of which they are pronounced, into labials, palatics, and linguals; and, in reference to the aspiration with which they are accompanied in the enunciation, into tenues, mediæ, and aspiratæ. This double division of the mute consonants of the German and English languages is contained in the following table—

	TENUES.	MEDIÆ.	ASPIRATÆ.
Labials	p, p	b, b	pf, f, f, v
Palatics	k, k (c)	g, g	ch, y, gh
Linguals	t (th), t	d, d	z, ß, th

Now, it is to be remarked:

1. The German aspiratæ often change in English to the tenues.

2. The German mediæ often change in English to the aspiratæ.

3. The German tenues often change in English to the mediæ.

With these three rules the key is given, to find out an affinity of a great many words in the two languages.

1. Thus, according the first rule, (*a*) the German pf and f are changed into an English *p*; (*b*) ch into *k*; (*c*) z and ß into *t*; for instance,

a. Pfeife, pipe; Pfeffer, pepper; Pfund, pound; Pforte, port; tief, deep; reif, ripe; Schiff, ship.

b. Koch, cook; Kuchen, cake; machen, to make.

c. Zehn, ten; zahm, tame; weiß, white; Hitze, heat.

2. According to the second rule, (*a*) the German b is changed into an English *f* or *v;* (*b*) g into *y* or *gh;* (*c*) d into *th;* for instance,

a. Weib, wife; Dieb, thief; halb, half; weben, to weave; treiben, to drive; haben, to have.

b. Gelb, yellow; gestern, yesterday; wiegen, to weigh; Pflug, plough; genug, enough.

c. Danken, to thank; dünn, thin; du, thou; Tod, death; da, there.

3. According to the third rule, (*a*) the German p is changed into an English *b;* (*b*) k into *g;* (*c*) t (th) into *d;* for instance,

a. Rippe, rib; Polster, bolster.

b. Brücke, bridge; Rücken, ridge; Ecke, edge.

c. Roth, red; Tag, day; Noth, need; Thal, dale; thun, to do.

OBSERVATIONS.

Besides the given rules, it may be remarked—

1. The German v often changes into an English *f*, as Volk, folk; Vogel, fowl.

2. The German f often changes into *v*, as Schaufel, shovel; Hafen, haven; zwölf, twelve.

3. The German k often remains the same, as König, king; Krebs, crab; Knabe, knave; Knie, knee: sometimes it changes into *ch*, as Kirche, church; Käse, cheese; Kinn, chin.

4. The German g often changes, in the middle and at the end, into *y*, *i*, *w*, and into *ow* after l or r, as Tag, day; sagen, to say; liegen, to lie; fliegen, to fly; hageln, to hail; mag, may; Bogen, bow; Morgen, to-morrow; folgen, to follow; Sorge, sorrow.

5. The German ch often changes into *gh*, as hoch, high; lachen, to laugh; Tochter, daughter; acht, eight.

6. The German j changes into *y*, as Jahr, year; jung, young.

7. The German s sometimes changes into *r*, as Hase, hare; Eisen, iron: and often the contrary takes place, r changes into *s* or *z*, as war, was; verlieren, to lose; frieren, to freeze.

8. The German n is often dropped in English; as wünschen, to wish; uns, us; Mund, mouth; fünf, five.

9. The l and r in German words are often transposed in English, as Brett, board; brennen, to burn; Roß, horse; spalten, to split; spielen, to play.

10. The English *mb* often corresponds to mm in German words, as lamb, Lamm; comb, Kamm; to climb, klimmen; to slumber, schlummern; timber, Zimmer.

11. *Palatics* often interchange in both languages—

a. With linguals, as flach, flat; to beg, bitten; Speichel, spittle; biegen, to bend, &c. But more frequently

b. With labials, as slack, schlaff; kriechen, to creep; stechen, to stab; Wage, wave; to sigh, seufzen, &c.

This is a slight sketch of the relation between the roots of the two languages; for more detailed matter we must refer to "Heilner's German Grammar," § 26; and for the historical development in the changes of the roots, to the First Part of "Dr. Jacob Grimm's German Grammar," vol. i. We shall now explain how German words are derived from these roots by means of derivation and composition.

CHAP. II.—ON THE FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 1. ON PRIMITIVE SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Substantives are either genuine roots, as Mann, man; Haus, house; Baum, tree; Stein, stone:

2. Or they are words immediately derived from

roots; *i. e.* without any termination, only through the addition of a consonant, such as t, ft, ſt, s, d, or the vowel e; for instance, Macht, might (from mag, may); Schlacht, battle (from Schlag, blow); Gift, a thing given (from geb, give); Kunſt, art (from kann, can); Bürde, burden; Knabe, (knave) boy; Löwe, lion; Neffe, nephew; Sprache, speech (from ſprech, speak).

Obs. Such immediate derivatives are also—

a. Substantives masculine in en agreeing with the infinitives, as Stecken, stick; Schrecken, fright; Graben, ditch; Braten, roast; Schaden, damage; Huſten, cough; and

b. Substantives in el, en, er, derived from verbal roots, as Schlüſſel, key; Flügel, wing; Biſſen, bit; Regen, rain; Hunger, hunger

§ 2. ON SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED BY SUFFIXES.

1. The suffixes by means of which substantives can be formed are—and, ath (at), chen, de, e, ei, el, er, heit, ich, icht, ig, inn, ing, keit, lein, ling, ner, niß, rich, ſal, ſchaft, ſel, thum, ung, uth.

2. Concrete substantives are formed by chen, lein, el, er, inn, and, ich, icht, rich, ing, ling, ſel.

a. Chen gives to derived substantives the additional meaning of diminutive, little, weak, pleasing, delicate, as Fingerchen, little finger; Kindchen, tiny child; Mütterchen, darling mother.

Obs. For the suffix chen, after ch and g, the suffix lein is substituted, as Bächlein, Jünglein, little brook, little boy; or an el is inserted before chen, as Büchelchen, little book; Wägelchen, little carriage. The termination el for lein is provincial, as Mädel, maid; Bübel, little boy.

b. Through el substantives are formed from verbs and other substantives: they convey the idea of in-

strumentality, as Hebel, lever; Schlägel, mallet; Deckel, cover; Klingel, bell.

c. Through er are formed (1) names of persons and animals derived from substantives feminine, as Wittwer, widower; Tauber, male pigeon; Kater, tom-cat: (2) names of men, according to their occupation and rank—(*a*) from infinitives, Reiter, horseman; Käufer, purchaser; Lehrer, teacher—(*b*) from substantives and verbal roots, Ritter, knight; Sänger, singer; Schäfer, shepherd; Gärtner, gardener; Töpfer, potter: (3) names of instruments, Bohrer, bore; Leuchter, candlestick; Drücker, the handle (of the lock).

d. Through inn are derived names of females from masculine substantives of men and animals, as Freundinn, female friend; Köchinn, female cook; Löwinn, lioness; Wölfinn, she wolf.

Obs. 1. From masculine substantives in erer, as Zauberer, wizard, the female name is derived by leaving out the termination er, as Zauberinn, witch.

Obs. 2. The titles of men are given to their wives, with the termination inn, as Frau Doctorinn, Mrs. Doctor; Frau Hofräthinn, Mrs. Court-Counsellor; Frau Gräfinn, Lady Countess.

e. Substantives derived by ing and ling from other substantives, adjectives, or verbs, imply the *individual* of the notion given in the root; for instance, Zwilling, twin; Fremdling, stranger; Neuling, novice; Findling, foundling; Abkömmling, descendant.

Obs. Whilst substantives derived by er mean the active agents, the same by ling imply the passive persons acted upon, as Finder and Findling; Gönner, patron, Günstling, favourite; Lehrer, teacher, Lehrling, apprentice; Miether, man who hires, Miethling, man who is hired. It is on that account that, with derivatives in ling, the idea of contempt is often

connected, as Dichterling, poetaster; Witzling, witling; Höflling, courtling; Frömmling, hypocrite; Sonderling, whimsical person.

f. Derivatives with and are formed from verbs, and have the meaning of the participle present, as Heiland, saviour (literally, like Heilend, the healing one).

g. Derivatives with ich or icht are collective names, as Kehrich or Kehricht, rubbish; Spühlicht, dish-wash; Dickicht, thicket; Röhricht, reed-bed.

h. Derivatives with rich imply names of persons and animals of the male sex, as Fähnrich, ensign; Wüthrich, tyrant; Gänserich, gander; Enterich, drake.

i. Substantives derived by sel refer to the object or result of an action, as Räthsel, (to be guessed) riddle; Häcksel, (to be hashed) chopped straw; Gemengsel, medley; Einschiebsel, insertion; Stöp(f)sel, stopper.

3. *Abstract Substantives* can be formed—

a. By e and a modification of the vowel, from adjectives: they express the pure notion of the adjective, as Größe, size; Höhe, height; Länge, length; Breite, breadth; Tiefe, depth; Schöne, beauty; Weiße, whiteness.

b. By heit, when derived—1. from names of persons, they signify the essence, the condition, and the individuality of the person, as Gottheit, the essence of God, the Divinity, and God Himself; Mannheit, the strength and the condition of a man; Kindheit, childhood; Menschheit and Christenheit, the totality of men and Christians.

2. When derived from adjectives, they refer to the abstract quality of the adjective, as Kleinheit, littleness; Klugheit, cleverness.

Obs. 1. Instead of the suffix heit, in derivatives from adjectives in el and er, bar, ig, lich, sam, the suffix keit is used,

as Eitelkeit, vanity; Heiterkeit, serenity; Kostbarkeit, preciousness; Heiligkeit, sanctity; Herrlichkeit, lordliness; Bildsamkeit, flexibility.

Exceptions—are dunkel and sicher, the derivatives from which are Dunkelheit, darkness, and Sicherheit, security.

Obs. 2. Sometimes derivatives with heit and keit are concrete substantives, as Flüssigkeit, fluid; Kleinigkeit, trifle.

Obs. 3. Derivatives from adjectives in haft and los insert ig, as Standhaft-ig-keit, constancy; Treulos-ig-keit, infidelity: thus, also, some derived from adjective roots, as Feucht-ig-keit, moistness; Süß-ig-keit, sweetness.

Obs. 4. If from the same root derivatives are formed with e and heit, those in e are concrete, whilst those in heit are abstract substantives; for instance, Ebene, the plain, Ebenheit, the evenness; Höhe, height, Hoheit, elevation (of the mind); Größe, size, Großheit, grandeur. If from the same adjective derivations are formed in heit and keit, the first are abstract, and the second concrete substantives, as Süß-heit, sweetness, Süßig-keit-en, sweetmeats; Feuchtheit, the moist nature, Feuchtigkeit, moisture; Neuheit, newness, Neuigkeit, novelty.

c. By ei, rei, or erei, when substantives are formed (1) from verbs, they represent the despicable action of the verb, as Heuchelei, hypocrisy; Schmeichelei, flattery; Tändelei, playfulness; sometimes they are concrete, as Spielerei, plaything; Schilderei, picture; Stickerei, embroidery: (2) when from names of persons of a certain occupation, they signify the occupation itself, or the place where, or the condition how, it is carried on, as Jägerei, the occupation *or* dwelling of the hunter; Färberei, the dyer's shop; Abtei, abbey; Sklaverei, slavery; Reiterei, cavalry, however, is a collective name: and (3) when from the plural in er of names of things, they are collective substantives,

as Länderei, territory; Gräserei, grass-field; Säm(en)=erei, seeds.

d. With niß substantives are derived from verbs and adjectives, and signify (1) either condition or quality, as Finsterniß, darkness; Verderbniß, corruption; Betrübniß, affliction: or (2) an action, represented as an occurrence, as Begräbniß, burial; Versäumniß, neglect; Verlöbniß, betrothment: or (3) the active or passive object of an action, as Hinderniß, impediment; Bündniß, alliance; Bildniß, picture.

e. With sal derivatives are formed from verbs and from substantives, in which there is a verbal root; they signify a condition, and are therefore abstract, as Drangsal, calamity; Schicksal, fate; however, they are also sometimes concrete, as Labsal, refreshment; Scheusal, monster.

f. Substantives with schaft, derived from adjectives and verbs, signify (1) the quality, relation, condition, or dignity of a person, as Freundschaft, friendship; Verwandtschaft, relationship; Herrschaft, mastery; Knechtschaft, slavery; Gefangenschaft, captivity; (2) the totality of many persons or things of the same kind, as Bürgerschaft, all the citizens, as a body; Kaufmannschaft, all the merchants in a town together; Grafschaft, county; Landschaft, province; Dorfschaft, the inhabitants of a village; Briefschaften, documents.

g. Substantives with thum, when derived (1) from adjectives and verbs, imply the condition and object, as Reichthum, riches; Wachsthum, growth; Eigenthum, property; Besitzthum, possession: (2) when from names of persons, they refer to the nature, rank, or the essence of the person, as Königthum, royalty; Christenthum, Christianity.

h. Substantives in ung are derived (1) from verbs

active, and express (*a*) either a pure, lasting action, as Führung, guidance; Stärkung, strengthening; Belehrung, teaching; or (*b*) the result of the action, as Mischung, mixture; Ladung, load; Bemerkung, remark: (2) they are derived from substantives and adjectives, and form concrete collective substantives, such as Holzung, wood; Waldung, forest; Witterung, weather.

i. Substantives derived with ath (at), uth, de, end, und, agree with derivatives in e and heit; they are abstract, and sometimes, also, concrete, as Heimath, home; Zierath, Zierde, ornament; Anmuth, grace; Freude, joy; Gemeinde, community; Jugend, youth; Leumund, rumour.

§ 3. ON SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED BY PREFIXES.

1. Derivative substantives can be formed by means of five prefixes. They are: ge, miß, un, ur, erz.

2. *a.* The prefix ge implies the notion of unity and collectiveness.

b. Substantives derived by means of ge, when formed from verbal roots and substantives, signify a person, in as far as it belongs to a society or co-operates with others, as Gespiele, playfellow; Geselle, Gefährte, Genosse, companion; Gehülfe, assistant; Geschwister, brother and sister; Gebrüder, brothers.

c. When formed from substantives, with a modification of the vowel, they are collective names, such as Gesträuch, shrubs; Gewässer, waters; Gebirge, chain of mountains; Gestirn, constellation.

d. When formed from verbs, or substantives of verbal roots, they signify (1) repeated activity; for instance, Gespräch, conversation; Gespött, scoffing; Gedränge, thronging; Gebell, barking; Gebrülle, low-

ing; Gerede, talking: (2) the effect of the activity, as Gebet, prayer; Gedicht, poem; Gesang, song: or (3) the means of activity, as Gewehr, gun; Gebiß, bit (of a horse); Geruch, smell; Gehör, hearing.

3. Substantives derived by miß imply (1) imperfection, falseness, or badness, as Mißton, dissonance; Mißernte, bad harvest; Mißheirath, misalliance; Mißgeschick, misfortune: (2) absence of the radical notion, as Mißgunst, grudge; Mißvergnügen, dissatisfaction.

4. The prefix un, in derivatives, implies (1) the denial of the radical notion, as Unfleiß, inapplication; Unrecht, injustice; Undank, ingratitude: or (2) the degeneracy of the radical notion, as Unmensch, monster; Unkraut, weeds; Unthat, misdeed; Unwetter, tempestuous weather.

5. The prefix ur signifies (1) motion out of the interior, proceeding, and production, as Urheber, author; Urlaub (= Erlaub), permission; Urtheil, judgment: (2) a beginning and origin, as Urahn, ancestor; Urquell, original source; Urschrift, original; Urzeit, antiquity.

6. The prefix erz means the first and principal in its kind, as Erzengel, archangel; Erzvater, patriarch; Erzbetrüger, arch-deceiver; Erzheuchler, arch-hypocrite.

§ 4. ON SUBSTANTIVES FORMED BY COMPOSITION.

1. Substantives can be formed by composition in a mechanical way, when several words syntactically connected are represented as a unity of words; for instance, (*a*) a substantive with its epithet, as der Geheimerath, the privy-counsellor, which, when preceded by ein, would be ein Geheimerrath; likewise der Hohepriester, die Langeweile: or (*b*) an infinitive with its

adverb, as das Fürsich-sein, being in a reflective state towards one's-self; das Hin- und Her-gehen, walking to and fro; das Außersich-sein, being beside one's-self; das Früh-aufstehen, getting up early; das Zuspät-kommen, coming too late: or (*c*) an adjective with an adverb, or a verb with an object or adverb, combined into one substantive, as der Nimmersatt, one never to be satisfied; das Immergrün, evergreen; das Jelänger-jelieber, (the longer the better) woodbine; der Taugenichts, Nichtsnutz, the good-for-nothing; der Störenfried, the peace-disturber; der Habenichts, one who has nothing; das Gerathewohl, chance; das Stelldichein, the rendezvous, meeting.

2. Substantives can also be formed when several words, without any syntactical connexion, are joined together as one substantive; for instance, (*a*) substantives with an adjective in its radical form, as der Vollmond, the full-moon; Neumond, new moon; der Rothwein, red wine; der Edelstein, the precious stone; das Neujahr, new year; die Oberlippe, the upper lip: or (*b*) a substantive with another substantive, in the genitive case, as its determinative compound, as Königssohn, king's son; Kindeskind, grandchild; Geschwisterkind, a brother *or* sister's child; Landesherr, sovereign; Mutterherz, a mother's heart; Herzensangst, the heart's anguish; Wirthshaus, inn. In this case the two compounds are sometimes united by means of an s, even if the substantive in the genitive case be of the feminine gender, as Wahrheits liebe, love of truth; Weihnachts fest, Christmas; Geburts tag, birthday. Finally, (*c*) a substantive added to another, and considered as its apposition, as Gottmensch, God and man; Fürstbischof, prince and bishop; Prinzregent, prince regent; Mannweib, virago; Rheinstrom,

the river Rhine; der Eichbaum, oak-tree; Marmorstein, marble.

3. Genuine compounds those substantives are called, which are so compounded that each part loses its individual meaning, and the whole word conveys an entirely new idea; for instance, der Handschuh, glove; Fingerhut, thimble; Weinstock, vine; Jungfrau, virgin; Junggesell, bachelor.

In such compositions the determinative or first compound can be—

a. The object to the main or second compound, as Holzhauer, woodcutter; Hutmacher, hatter.

b. The two compounds can stand in an adverbial relation, as das Feldhuhn (*i.e.* das Huhn auf dem Felde), partridge; der Nordwind (*i.e.* der Wind vom Norden), northwind; der Feldzug (*i.e.* der Zug in das Feld), campaign. Thus, also, der Nachtwächter (Wächter während der Nacht), night-watch; die Windmühle, das Dampfschiff (Mühle mittels des Windes, Schiff mittels des Dampfes), windmill, steamboat.

c. The determinative compound can be a verb, in the form of the verbal root of the infinitive, as Singvogel, singing-bird; Säemann, sower; Klapperschlange, rattlesnake; Fasttag, day of fast.

d. The determinative compound can be a particle, as in Vortheil, advantage; Mitmensch, fellow-man; Ausland, foreign country; Fürbitte, intercession.

Obs. In order to avoid a difficulty in reading, the two component parts are often united through two horizontal lines (=). This is done—1. when the second part begins with a vowel, and when it is uncertain whether a double consonant belongs entirely to the first or partly to the second compound, as Nest=ei, egg in the nest; Damm=erde, the soil of the dike; Sand=erde, sandy soil; and particularly

when a misunderstanding can arise; Augarten, for instance, can mean two things according to its composition; it may mean "different kinds of eyes," in this case it must be written Aug-arten. It can also mean "a garden in a plain," and then it will be written Au-garten. Baumast can be Baum-ast, the branch of a tree, and Bau-mast, a mast-tree for building. Erdrücken may be Erd-rücken, ridge of earth, and er-drücken, to crush.

2. When the compound word is very long; for instance, Brandversicherungs-anstalt, fire-insurance office.

3. When several substantives, as determinative words, have one substantive for a main component, they are either all, or all but the last, separated from the second part; for instance, Feld- und Garten-früchte, field and garden fruit, or Feld- und Gartenfrüchte; drei- vier- und mehrfach, threefold, fourfold, and manifold; aus- und eingehen, to go in and out.

CHAP. III.—ON THE FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 1. ON PRIMITIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. Primitive adjectives, in German, are roots, and, as such, monosyllables, as reich, rich; arm, poor; groß, great; klein, small; gut, good; schlecht, bad.

2. Or they are roots with the terminations el, en, er, ern, as dunkel, dark; eitel, vain; eben, plain, even; offen, open; trocken, dry; sicher, sure; tapfer, brave; albern, silly; schüchtern, shy.

§ 2. ON ADJECTIVES DERIVED BY SUFFIXES.

1. The suffixes by which adjectives can be derived are—bar, n, en, and ern, haft, icht, ig, isch, lich, los, sam, selig.

2. The prefix bar, from the old word baren, to bear, serves for the derivation of adjectives (*a*) from sub-

stantives, and particularly from verbal substantives, as fruchtbar, fruitful; dankbar, thankful; dienstbar, serviceable; furchtbar, fearful; kostbar, precious; sichtbar, visible: and (*b*) from verbs, as eßbar, eatable; trinkbar, drinkable; schätzbar, estimable.

3. Bar in such derivatives implies—

a. Producing, causing, or performing what the root expresses, as furchtbar, formidable (productive of fear); kostbar, costly (productive of expense); fruchtbar, fertile (productive of fruit); wunderbar, wonderful (causing wonder); dienstbar, serviceable (performing some service); urbar, productive, arable.

b. Carrying with it, having the appearance of that which the root means, as ehrbar, honourable; scheinbar, seeming; mannbar, manly.

c. Capability to act, or to be acted upon, in the way the verbal root implies: for instance, brennbar, combustible, and capable of burning; denkbar, imaginable; streitbar, (capable of fighting) able-bodied; sichtbar, visible; tragbar, bearable; haltbar, lasting; unfehlbar, infallible; gangbar, current; mannbar, marriageable.

4. The suffix n or en refers to the material of which something is made, as leinen, linen; flachsen, flaxen; golden, golden; hanfen, made of hemp; wollen, woollen; seiden, silken; eichen, made of oak; birken, made of birch; irden, made of earth.

Obs. 1. N is the suffix for words terminating with er, as silbern, of silver; ledern, made of leather; kupfern, made of copper; eisern (from the old word isar), of iron; ehern (from the old er, now Erz, brass), brazen.

Obs. 2. In hölzern, wooden; gläsern, of glass; brettern, of board; hörnern, of horn, the suffix n has been attached

to the plural number, so that the termination, in reality, is only n, and not ern; but, deceived by the analogy of these plurals, and by words ending with er, the usage has formed adjectives with a suffix ern, such as, bleiern, leaden; zinnern, of tin; steinern, of stone; beinern, of bone; thönern, of clay; wächsern, of wax; stählern, of steel.

5. The suffix haft is used (*a*) in derivatives from substantives, but rarely from names of persons and animals, as fabelhaft, fabulous; herzhaft, courageous; namhaft, known by name; leibhaft, bodily; mannhaft, manly; geckenhaft, foppish; schalkhaft, roguish; meisterhaft, masterly; eselhaft, like an ass; riesenhaft, gigantic: (*b*) from verbal substantives, as schamhaft, bashful; tugendhaft, virtuous; standhaft, constant: (*c*) from verbs, as naschhaft, junketing; schwatzhaft, talkative; schmeichelhaft, flattering; flatterhaft, fickle; zaghaft, timid; lebhaft, lively; wohnhaft, dwelling: (*d*) from adjectives; for instance, boshaft, malicious; krankhaft, morbid; wahrhaft, true; leckerhaft, dainty-mouthed.

6. The suffix haft, from the verb haften, to adhere to, denotes—

a. The possession of, or connexion with, the idea expressed by the root, as fehlerhaft, faulty; gewissenhaft, conscientious; schmackhaft, tasty; dauerhaft, durable; schmerzhaft, painful.

b. A propensity to, or a similarity with, the object of the substantive, as grillenhaft, whimsical; plauderhaft, garrulous; bettelhaft, beggar-like; bengelhaft, clownish; schülerhaft, school-boy like.

7. The suffix icht, in derivatives from substantives, denotes similarity to what is expressed by the substantive root, as holzicht, like wood; thonicht, resembling clay; steinicht, like stone; glasicht, the same as

glas=artig, like glass; milchicht, the same as milch=artig, milk-like; öhlicht, the same as öhl=artig, resembling oil.

Obs. Thöricht, however, means foolish, not fool-like; and farbicht, is richly coloured, not colour-like.

8. The suffix ig serves for forming derivatives (*a*) from substantives, either—(1) verbal substantives, such as mächtig, powerful; günstig, favourable; verdächtig, suspicious; lästig, troublesome; andächtig, devout; mäßig, temperate; frostig, frosty—or (2) from old roots, such as billig, equitable; selig, blessed; üppig, luxurious; ewig, eternal; stätig, steady; dürftig, indigent—or (3) from common names, as blumig, flowery; schuppig, scaly; waldig, woody; sonnig, sunny; langohrig, long-eared; barfüßig, bare-footed—or (4) from names of materials, as luftig, airy; feuerig, fiery; sandig, sandy; erdig, earthy; rostig, rusty; wässerig, watery; blutig, bloody; salzig, salty; staubig, dusty: (*b*) from verbs, as säumig, tardy; beißig, biting; brummig, grumbling; stößig, butty; beliebig, to one's liking; ergiebig, productive; nachgiebig, yielding; freigebig, liberal; nachlässig, negligent; gefällig, pleasing; gehörig, belonging; fähig, capable; rüstig, vigourous: (*c*) from adverbs, numbers, and prepositions, as jetzig, actual; baldig, speedy; abermalig, repeated; hiesig, of this place; ehemalig, former; dortig, of that place; heutig, of to-day; vorig, former; übrig, remaining; widrig, adverse; niedrig, base; einig, united; einzig, single: (*d*) from pronouns, as der meinige, mine; derjenige, he who.

9. The suffix ig denotes—

a. Possession of what is expressed by the primitive word, as steinig, stony, full of stones; kupfrig, replete

with copper; haarig, hairy; wollig, woolly; dornig, thorny; fleckig, spotted.

b. It refers as adverb, preposition, pronoun, and number, in the shape of an adjective, to a substantive, as jetzig, actual; vorig, former; hiesig, of here; dortig, of yonder; einig, agreeing.

10. The suffix isch denotes—

a. Possession of the particular vice contained in the root, as argwöhnisch, suspicious; neidisch, envious; abergläubisch, superstitious; diebisch, thievish.

b. Belonging to, or being contained in, the notion of the root, as städtisch, coming from town; biblisch, contained in the Bible; himmlisch, celestial; einheimisch, native.

c. An aptitude to the action of the root, as mürrisch, morose; spöttisch, sarcastic; zänkisch, quarrelsome.

d. A similarity to the idea of the root, as abgöttisch, idolatrous; englisch, angelic; kriegerisch, warlike; dichterisch, poetical; malerisch, picturesque.

e. Nationality, or a reference to individuals, as Griechisch, Greek; Indisch, Indian; Italienisch, Italian; Preußisch, Prussian; Französisch, French; Berlinisch, of Berlin; Lutherisch, Lutheran.

11. The suffix isch makes derivatives (*a*) from names of places, persons, and animals, as irdisch, earthly; spanisch, Spanish; närrisch, foolish; kaufmännisch, merchantlike; thierisch, beastly; hündisch, doggish; Homerisch, Homeric: (*b*) from verbs and verbal substantives, as tückisch, spiteful; spöttisch, mocking; (*c*) from Greek words in *ικός*, and Latin in *icus*, as logisch, logical; physisch, physical; kritisch, critical; historisch, historical; poetisch, poetical; dramatisch, dramatic.

12. The suffix lich forms derivatives (*a*) from other adjectives, as ärmlich, miserable; länglich, longish: (*b*) from names of persons, common and verbal substantives, as menschlich, humane; männlich, manly; fürstlich, princely; königlich, royal; ängstlich, anxious; künstlich, artful; ländlich, country-like; sittlich, moral: (*c*) from verbs, as tauglich, fit; schädlich, hurtful; beharrlich, persevering; förderlich, furthering; erbaulich, edifying: (*d*) from participles present, with the d changed into t, as hoffentlich, hopeful; wissentlich, knowing; flehentlich, imploring; wesentlich, real; erkenn(en)tlich, grateful. And, according to this analogy, derivatives are formed from substantives and adjectives in en, as namentlich, by name; gelegentlich, occasional; öffentlich, public; eigentlich, peculiar; verschiedentlich, different; wöchentlich, weekly.

13. The suffix lich denotes—

a. A similarity, as freundlich, friendly (friend-like); männlich, manly; göttlich, divine, god-like.

b. A participation, in a somewhat lower degree, in the quality of the root, as röthlich, reddish; schwärzlich, blackish; zärtlich, tender, affectionate. Hence the notion of diminutiveness and contempt is arising from such derivatives, as weichlich, softish; schwächlich, weakish; ärmlich, miserable; kleinlich, mean.

c. An aptitude to perform or to suffer the action of the root, as tröstlich, consolatory; erfreulich, glad; behaglich, comfortable; erbaulich, edifying; nützlich, useful; sterblich, mortal.

Obs. Some derivatives are made passive by the suffix bar, and active by lich, as empfindlich, sensitive, empfindbar, perceptible; nützlich, useful, nutzbar, fit for use. In others there is only a shade of difference, as leserlich, readable, in point of clearness of print; lesbar, readable, in reference to

the contents: furchtbar is *mighty and awful*, fürchterlich, terrible in appearance.

d. A recurrence of the same period of time, when added to nouns denoting a part of time, as jährlich, annual; täglich, daily; monatlich, monthly; stündlich, hourly.

Obs. Remark the difference between jährlich, annual, once a year, and jährig, old *or* lasting a year, as ein jährlicher Besuch, an annual visit, ein einjähriges Kind, a child one year old; ein dreitägiges Fieber, a fever returning every third day, a tertian fever.

e. The property of the person or thing referred to by the root, as königlich, royal; geistlich, ghostly, clerical; zeitlich, timely.

f. The manner of an action or condition, as künstlich, artful; natürlich, natural; schriftlich, by means of writing; mündlich, verbal, by means of speaking; bildlich, figurative; herzlich, hearty; wörtlich, buchstäblich, literal.

Obs. Remark the difference between geistlich, clerical, and geistig, spiritual; the opposite to the first is weltlich, laical, to the second, körperlich or sinnlich, corporeal, sensual: zeitig means *mature*, and zeitlich, timely, early; thätig is *active*, but thätlich, founded cn fact, actual; wunderlich is *strange*, wunderbar, wonderful; sichtlich, striking, clear, sichtbar, visible; ehrlich, honourable, ehrbar, striving after propriety.

14. The suffix los has the same power as the English *less*, as trostlos, comfortless; sinnlos, senseless; freudenlos, joyless; schlaflos, sleepless; hülflos, helpless; fruchtlos, fruitless; hoffnungslos, (where the s before los is a sign of binding the two components together) hopeless.

15. The suffix sam forms adjectives (*a*) from verbal substantives, as bedachtsam, considerate; betriebsam,

industrious; furchtsam, timid; gewaltsam, violent; mühsam, troublesome; grausam, cruel; and (*b*) from verbs, as biegsam, flexible; duldsam, patient; empfindsam, susceptible; erfindsam, ingenious, inventive; genügsam, frugal; wirksam, effective.

Obs. The adjectives langsam, slow, and seltsam, singular, strange, are not derivatives with sam, but formed from old words; and einsam, solitary; gemeinsam, common; genugsam, sattsam, sufficient, are more used as adverbs than as adjectives; gleichsam, like as, *so to say*, is always an adverb.

16. The suffix sam originally signified *similarity;* it denotes—

a. With substantives, the presence or possession of the object or quality expressed by the noun, as mühsam, full of trouble; tugendsam, virtuous; wundersam, marvellous; furchtsam, fearful.

b. With a verb, readiness, capability, or aptitude to perform or to suffer the action of the verb, as heilsam, wholesome; arbeitsam, laborious; erfindsam, inventive; duldsam, patient; sorgsam, careful; rathsam, adviseable; biegsam, flexible; lenksam, manageable.

Obs. Mark the difference between empfindsam, having sensation, empfindbar, what can be felt, and empfindlich, easily to be offended, sensitive; bildlich, symbolical, and bildsam, what can be formed, plastic; furchtsam, having fear, timid, and furchtbar, inspiring fear, terrible; heilsam, wholesome, and heilbar, curable; achtsam, attentive, and achtbar, estimable.

17. The suffix selig is derived from the old substantive Sal, plenty, abundance, and denotes being abundantly provided with the object or quality expressed by the noun to which it is joined, as holdselig, graceful; armselig, wretched; leutselig, affable; glückselig, fortunate.

§ 3. ON ADJECTIVES DERIVED BY PREFIXES.

1. The prefixes, by means of which adjectives can be derived, are be, ge, miß, un, ur, erz.

2. The prefix be has no clear meaning in many adjectives, as behend (from Hand), *i. e.* bei der Hand, quick; bereit, ready; bequem (from an old word implying *to come*), comfortable.

3. The prefix ge has, likewise, (*a*) no particular meaning in many adjectives, as geheuer, secure; gemein, common; genau, exact; gerade, straight; gering, low; gescheit, clever; gesund, healthy: (*b*) it adds to the intensity of the root, as gerecht, just; getreu, faithful; gelind, gentle (from recht, right; treu, true; lind, mild): (*c*) with verbs and verbal roots it denotes being endowed with, or having capacity for, or inclination to, what the verb imports, as geschwind, (disappearing) quick; gelenk, pliant; genehm, acceptable; gewärtig, expecting; geläufig, fluent: (*d*) with substantives, to which is added a termination like a participle in t, it denotes to be gifted or provided with the notion of the substantive, as gestiefelt, booted; gespornt, spurred; gehörnt, horned; geflügelt, winged; gelaunt, humoured; gesittet, mannered; gestirnt, starry.

Obs. Mark the difference between ein gesporntes Pferd, a horse spurred on, and ein gespornter Reiter, a spurred horseman.

4. The prefixes miß, un, ur, and erz, have the same meaning in derivative adjectives which they had with substantives.

§ 4. ON ADJECTIVES FORMED BY COMPOSITION.

1. The main part in compound adjectives is always an adjective; the qualifying part, either adjective or substantive, as hellblau, light blue, sinnvoll, full of import.

2. The composition, by which adjectives are formed, is either (*a*) *imperfect*, when two adjectives are mechanically written in one word, instead of being connected by und, and; for instance, taubstumm, deaf and dumb; kaiserlich-königlich, imperial and royal; dreizehn, thirteen: or when the compound is made of an adjective and a qualifying substantive, in the genitive or dative case, according to the government of the adjective, as lobenswerth, preiswürdig, worthy of praise; merkwürdig, remarkable; lebenssatt, tired of life; kunsterfahren, experienced in the fine arts, expert; liebevoll, affectionate; hoffnungslos, hopeless; menschenähnlich, man-like; gottergeben, resigned to God. Or (*b*) it is *genuine* (1) when the qualifying part materially determines the notion of the adjective, and both component parts convey a new idea, as hellgelb, bright yellow; todtkrank, (deadly) dangerously ill; himmelblau, sky-blue; baumstark, strong as a tree, very strong; eiskalt, cold as ice, very cold: (2) when the qualifying substantive stands in some relation to the adjective by means of a preposition, as seelkrank, diseased in the mind; wasserscheu, afraid of the water, hydrophobe; geldarm, poor in money; holzreich, rich in wood, woody; geistvoll, spirited, full of genius; fingerdick, as thick as a finger; handhoch, one hand high; grundehrlich, downright honest; diensteifrig, officious.

Obs. 1. Many compounded adjectives are only apparently so, whilst they, in reality, are derivatives from compounded words, as großmüthig, generous, from Großmuth; argwöhnisch, suspicious, from Argwohn; langweilig, tiresome, from Langeweile; lebenslustig, enjoying life, from Lebenslust; beiläufig, by the way, from beilaufen, to run by the side of; nachgiebig, yielding, from nachgeben.

Obs. 2. Many compounded adjectives are formed by

joining a derivative suffix to two words, which were before not connected, as vierfüßig, four-footed, quadruped, is not formed from vier and füßig, nor from Vierfuß and ig, but from ig attached to two previously unconnected words, vier and Fuß; thus also, einseitig, one-sided, partial; großherzig, high-minded; langnasig, long-nosed; weißarmig, with white arms; freiwillig, free, willing; kaltblütig, cold-blooded.

Obs. 3. The main parts, most frequent in compounds of adjectives, are reich, rich; arm, poor; voll, full; leer, empty, bare; fertig, ready; frei, free; würdig, worth, worthy; fest, firm; fähig, capable; mäßig, moderate; farbig, coloured, and some others.

CHAP. IV.—ON NUMBERS FORMED BY DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

1. The chief formations of numbers, both by derivation and composition, have been mentioned in the First Part, Chap. IV.

2. It is only to be added, that from the number ein, one, three derivatives are formed—(*a*) allein, (all one) alone, as wir allein, we alone: (*b*) einzig, only, single, as mein einziger Sohn, my only son: (*c*) einig, agreeing with, formerly as much as einzig; for instance, ein einiger Gott, an only God.

3. In some compounds, the form zwie is adopted instead of zwei, two, as zwiefach, twofold, double; Zwieback, biscuit; Zwielicht, twilight; Zwiespalt, Zwietracht, discord.

CHAP. V.—ON THE FORMATION OF VERBS.

§ 1. ON THE FORMATION OF VERBS BY DERIVATION WITHOUT SUFFIXES.

1. Verbs can be formed by adding the verbal termination en (*a*) partly to substantives, as munden, to

relish; fußen, to take footing; fischen, to fish; schiffen, to sail; hausen, to house; grasen, to graze; pflügen, to plough; füttern, to feed; buttern, to make butter; ackern, to till; schneidern, to make clothes; feuern, to fire; hämmern, to hammer; würfeln, to play at dice: and (*b*) partly to adjectives, with a modification of the vowel, as stärken, to strengthen; schwächen, to weaken; glätten, to smooth; röthen, to redden; wärmen, to warm; weißen, to white-wash; grünen, to grow verdant.

2. Verbs can be formed from other verbs by a change of a letter in the root: thus factitive verbs are formed from verbs intransitive (*a*) by a change or modification of the vowel, as fällen, to fell; säugen, to suckle; ersäufen, to drown; tränken, to make drink; senken, to make sink; schwemmen, to float; sprengen, to burst; verschwenden, (to make disappear) to squander; legen, to lay; führen, to conduct: and (*b*) by a change of a consonant, either alone, or connected with a modification of the vowel, as stellen, to place; beizen, to etch; stecken, to stick; wecken, to awaken; ätzen, to feed.

§ 2. ON THE FORMATION OF VERBS BY SUFFIXES.

1. The derivative syllables, by which verbs can be formed, are chen, ken, chten, eln, ern, schen, zen, enzen, igen, iren.

2. The syllables chen, ken, and chten, add an intensive power to the signification of the root; for instance, horchen, to listen; schnarchen, to snore; placken, to torment; henken, to hang; bücken, to bow, stoop; nicken, to nod; schlachten, to slaughter; trachten, (to carry constantly in one's thoughts) to meditate; flüchten, to fly—(from hören, to hear; schnarren, to rattle; plagen, to plague; hängen, to hang; biegen, to

bend; neigen, to bow; schlagen, to beat; tragen, to carry; fliehen, to fly).

3. The syllable eln forms diminutives, iteratives, and imitatives, as lächeln, to smile; spötteln, to jeer; schnitzeln, to chip; kritzeln, to scribble; kränkeln, to be sickly; streicheln, to stroke; schütteln, to shake; betteln, to beg; tröpfeln, to trickle; liebeln, to flirt; künsteln, to refine; witzeln, to play the wit; frösteln, to shiver a little; näseln, to snuffle; klügeln, to subtilise; frömmeln, to affect piety.

4. The syllable ern makes iteratives, desideratives, and factitives, as klappern, to rattle; stochern, to pick; schläfern, to have a wish to sleep; lächern, to have an inclination for laughing; räuchern, to smoke; folgern, to infer; steigern, to increase; einschläfern, to lull to sleep.

5. The syllable schen only occurs in herrschen, to domineer; feilschen, to haggle; and forschen, to investigate.

6. The syllable zen combines an imitation of a natural sound with an iteration of the meaning, as ächzen (from ach!), to groan; jauchzen (from juche!), to huzza; schluchzen (from schlucken), to sob; duzen, to address with Thou; seufzen, to sigh; lechzen, to languish.

7. Enzen has an imitative meaning, and is of rare occurrence, as faulenzen, to idle.

8. The termination igen derives (*a*) factitive verbs from verbs and adjectives, as endigen, to make an end; reinigen, to cleanse: (*b*) intensives and iteratives from nouns, as ängstigen, to make uneasy; verkündigen, to announce; vereidigen, to administer an oath; beglaubigen, to attest; befriedigen, to satisfy; begnadigen, to pardon; beschädigen, to damage.

9. The termination iren is a foreign one, meaning the same as the German en; it occurs (*a*) in foreign words, as ſtudiren, to study; marſchiren, to march; vegetiren, to vegetate; ſpazieren and regieren (which two have the termination ieren), to walk, to rule: (*b*) with German roots, as hauſiren, to hawk goods; halbiren, to halve; ſchattiren, to shade; buchſtabiren, to spell; gaſtiren, to feast.

Obs. From the foreign nouns—Barbier, barber, Quartier, quarter, and Turnier, tournament—verbs are formed with en, as barbieren, to shave; quartieren, to quarter; turnieren, to tilt; in which the syllable ier belongs to the root, and not to the termination.

§ 3. ON THE FORMATION OF VERBS BY PREFIXES.

1. The prefixes, by means of which new verbs can be formed, are eight in number, be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, zer, and miß.

2. The prefix be (originally the particle bei, by) in derivatives from verbs—1. refers the notion of the root to an object, *i.e.* makes verbs active from verbs neuter, as befallen, to befall; begehen, to commit; beweinen, to lament; beſprechen, to bespeak; beſteigen, to mount; beſcheinen, to shine upon; beſitzen, to possess; beſingen, to praise by a song; belachen, to deride; betrauern, to lament; bewachen, to guard; bedienen, to serve, wait upon; beknurren, to snarl at.

2. If the root is an active verb with an object, then the derivative with be refers to another object, and extends the action of the root all over this second object; for instance, bebauen, to cultivate (a field, &c. all over); bemalen, to paint (a room, &c. all over); bepflanzen, to plant over; beſetzen, to occupy; berauben, to deprive; belohnen, to reward.

3. In verbs like bekleiden, to clothe; beschlagen, to case; bedecken, to cover; beschützen, to protect; beschimpfen, to insult; bedrängen, to distress; bedenken, to consider, &c. the object of the root is also that of the derivative; only, in the latter case, the action of the verb is understood to extend all over the object.

4. The prefix be is sometimes, but rarely, found in derivatives neuter, as begegnen, to occur; behagen, to please; beharren, to persevere; bestehen, to consist of; bekommen, to suit, agree with; belieben, to please; bleiben (contracted from beleiben), to remain.

5. Derivatives with be, formed from nouns, express the being gifted or provided with the notion of the root, as beflügeln, to wing; belauben, to cover with foliage; beseelen, to animate; begeistern, to inspire; berauschen, to intoxicate; bemannen, to man; besolden, to keep in pay; befreien, to free; betrüben, to afflict; beschweren, to molest; bereichern, to enrich; belustigen, to amuse; bestätigen, to confirm; befähigen, to capacitate; beruhigen, to appease. In such cases, an ig is often inserted after the root; for instance, bekösti gen, to board; befriedigen, to content; begnadigen, to pardon; beleidigen, to offend; berechtigen, to entitle; begünstigen, to favour; beschädigen, to damage; befestigen, to confirm; beschönigen, to palliate.

6. Several verbs, derived by be from other verbs or nouns, are reflective, as beeifern, to endeavour; befleißen or befleißigen, to apply one's-self; befinden, to find one's-self; begeben, to betake one's-self; begnügen, to be satisfied; behelfen, to make shift; bemächtigen and bemeistern, to make one's-self master of; bestreben, to exert one's-self; betragen, to conduct one's-self; betrinken, to get tipsy.

3. The prefix emp (contracted of anbe or einbe) only

forms three derivatives from verbs, which begin with f; they are, empfangen, to receive; empfehlen, to recommend; and empfinden, to feel.

4. The prefix ent (originally as much as entgegen, bringing near)—1. has the same meaning as emp, in referring the notion of the root to the speaking or to the addressed person, as entbieten, to command; entrichten, to discharge; sich entsinnen, to remember; entsprechen, to correspond to.

2. It implies transition, and makes verbs inchoative, as entzünden, to kindle; entblößen, to bare; entflammen, entbrennen, to inflame; entschlafen, entschlummern, to fall asleep; entstehen, entspinnen, to arise.

3. It gives the idea of distancing and proceeding from an object, as entgehen, to escape; entfliegen, to fly away; entkommen, to get off; entfallen, to drop; entlaufen, to run away; entführen, to carry off; entschlüpfen, to slip out of; entreißen, to snatch from; entziehen, to withdraw from; entwenden, to steal; entfremden, to estrange; entlassen, to dismiss; enthalten, to restrain; entnehmen, to conclude; entsagen, to resign; entwerfen (*i.e.* von sich werfen, to throw from one), to sketch; entzücken (*i.e.* fortziehen, to draw away), to carry away, to charm; sich entsetzen (*i.e.* von etwas weggesetzt sein, to be driven away), to be terrified; entbehren, to lack.

4. It signifies the deprivation or negation of the idea of the root, corresponding to the English *dis*, *un*, —as entdecken, to discover; entladen, to unload; entbinden, to deliver; entfalten, to unfold; entehren, to dishonour; enthüllen, to unveil; entschließen (equal to aufschließen, öffnen, to unlock), to resolve; entstellen (*i.e.* to destroy the position), to disfigure; entweihen, to desecrate; entfärben, to discolour; entblättern, to

deprive of leaves; enthaupten, to behead; entkräften, to weaken; entkleiden, to undress; entfesseln, to unfetter; entleiben, to kill; entseelen, to deprive of life.

5. The prefix er implies—1. an upward motion, as erbauen, to erect; erheben, to elevate; erfüllen, (to fill up to the brim) to fulfil; erhöhen, to raise; ersteigen, to mount up; erwachsen, to grow up; erschrecken, (to frighten up) to frighten; erstehen, (to stand up) to rise; erziehen, to rear up.

2. It signifies—*a.* to get into a condition, and forms inchoatives from other verbs or adjectives, as erwachen, to awake; erblühen, to bloom; erklingen, ertönen, to sound; erscheinen, to appear; erbeben, erzittern, to tremble; erbleichen, to turn pale; erröthen, to blush; erkalten, to grow cold; erlahmen, to get lame; erblinden, to get blind; erhellen, to become evident; erkranken, to fall ill; ermatten, ermüden, to get tired; erschlaffen, to slacken.

b. To bring into a condition, and forms verbs active and reflective, as sich erkälten, to catch cold; ergänzen, to complete; erniedrigen, to humble; erweitern, to enlarge; erfreuen, to rejoice; erbittern, to embitter; erfrischen, to refresh; erzürnen, to enrage; erinnern, (to bring back to the interior) to remember; erquicken (from quick, *i. e.* living), to restore, refresh.

3. It conveys an intensive power, with the additional idea of completing or gaining an object by means of the radical notion, as erschöpfen, to exhaust; ergründen, to fathom; erschüttern, to shake; erwarten, to expect; erleben, (to live up to) to live to see, to live to hear; erdulden, to tolerate; ertragen, to suffer; erleuchten, to illumine; ermessen, to measure out; erschlagen, ermorden, to slay; erstechen, to poniard; ermahnen, to admonish; erretten, to save; ernennen, to

name, choose, create; erlangen, to acquire; ergreifen, to seize; erreichen, to reach, obtain; erfassen, to seize; erblicken, to perceive; erobern, (to get the upper hand) to conquer; ersparen, to save; erkennen, to recognize; errathen, to guess; erlernen, erbetteln, ersingen, ertrotzen, erschleichen, to acquire by learning, begging, singing, defying, sneaking.

6. The prefix ge in derivative verbs signifies—1. coalescence, union, companionship, as gefrieren (*i. e.* zusammen frieren), to freeze (together); gerinnen, to curdle; gefallen, to agree with, to please; gehören, (to hear, to belong to somebody) to belong; gehorchen, to obey; geleiten, to accompany.

2. Ge often serves to give intensity to the radical notion, as gereuen, to repent; gedenken, to remember; sich getrauen, to trust one's-self; gelüsten, to have a longing; geziemen, to become, behove.

3. The prefix ge sometimes entirely changes the meaning of the radical notion; for instance, gebrauchen, to employ (from brauchen, to be in need of); gerathen, to fall, to be betrayed into (from rathen, to advise); gebieten, to command (from bieten, to bid); gebrechen, to ail (from brechen, to break); gestehen, to confess (from stehen, to stand); gereichen, to prove (from reichen, to reach).

4. Several derivatives with ge are not used in the primitive form, as gelingen, to succeed; genesen, to recover; genießen, to enjoy; geruhen (from an old word ruahan, to care), to condescend.

7. The prefix ver implies—1. the opposite notion to that of the root, as verthun, to squander; verlernen, to forget; verführen, to seduce; verleiten, to mislead; sich verschreiben, verrechnen, versehen, to make a mistake in writing, ciphering, seeing; verachten, to despise; verrathen, to betray; versagen, to refuse.

2. It gives intensity to the radical notion, and often, at the same time, changes the neuter into an active verb, as verlieren, to lose; verderben, to spoil; verschwenden, to squander away; verlachen, verspotten, to mock, deride; verfluchen, to curse; verschweigen, to conceal; verfehlen, to miss.

3. It expresses the accomplishing of, or the destruction of an object through the radical notion, as verblühen, to fade; verbluten, to bleed to death; verbrauchen, to spend; verfließen, to pass by; verwesen, (to cease to be, from Wesen) to get putrid; verbringen, to spend; verleben, to pass (to live to the end); verhandeln, to sell; verhungern, to starve; verschlingen, to swallow; verbleiben, verharren, to persevere in remaining, to remain; vergelten, (completely to restore) to requite; verspielen, vertrinken, verspeisen, to lose by playing, drinking, feasting.

4. It implies the covering or shutting up by means of the radical notion, as verbauen, to shut by building; verbinden, to bandage; vergraben, to inter; verkleben, to plaster over; vermauern, to wall up; vernageln, to nail up; vernarben, to heal to a scar; verriegeln, to bar, to bolt; versiegeln, to seal up; verwachsen, to be grown over; verschneien, to cover with snow.

5. It signifies the getting or putting into a condition, and often, at the same time, strengthening the radical notion, as bergen and verbergen, to hide, shelter; ändern and verändern, to change; lassen, to leave, verlassen, to abandon; mehren and vermehren, to increase; sich bessern, to improve, and verbessern, to better; verzagen, to despair; vergnügen, to amuse; sich verlieben, to fall in love.

6. It implies to make or to become that which the

notion of the radical noun conveys, as vergöttern, to deify; verketzern, to accuse of heresy; verkrüppeln, to cripple; verwaisen, to render an orphan; veralten, to get obsolete; verstummen, to get dumb; verarmen, to impoverish; verbittern, to embitter; versüßen, to sweeten; verdeutschen, to translate into German; verdichten, to condense; verdünnen, to thin; veredeln, to improve; verkürzen, to shorten; vergolden, to gild.

Obs. Many derivatives with ver can, at the same time, belong to different classes, and have, therefore, different meanings; for instance, versprechen, to make a mistake in speaking (class 1), and to promise (class 3); likewise, verschreiben, to make a mistake in writing, and to promise in writing; verbauen, to spend in building (class 3), and to wall up (class 4); verbinden, to bandage (class 4), to bind wrongly (class 1), and to oblige one's-self to (class 5); versetzen, to make a mistake in setting (class 1), and to transpose (class 5); verwesen, to get putrid, to cease to be (class 3), and to administer (class 5).

8. The prefix zer denotes disjunction, and often destruction, through the activity of the radical notion, as zerbrechen, to break asunder; zerreißen, to tear asunder; zerschneiden, to cut asunder; zerstören, to destroy; zertrümmern, to wreck, to ruin.

The derivatives with zer are often reflective, and denote a self-weakening through the exertion implied in the radical idea, as sich zerarbeiten, zerplagen, to ruin one's health by work, care.

9. The prefix miß denotes (1) want, imperfection, or wrong in the use of the radical notion, as mißhandeln, to ill-treat; mißdeuten, to misinterpret; mißverstehen, to misunderstand; mißarten, to degenerate; mißtönen, to be discordant. (2) It implies the opposite to the idea of the root, as mißbilligen, to dis-

approve; mißgönnen, to grudge; mißtrauen, to mistrust; mißachten, to undervalue; mißfallen, to displease; mißlingen, mißrathen, to miscarry.

§ 4. ON THE FORMATION OF VERBS BY COMPOSITION.

1. Verbs are formed by composition of other verbs with qualitative adverbs, *without change of meaning;* they are separable, as großthun, to boast—ich that groß, ich habe groß gethan, I boasted, I have boasted; thus, also, großsprechen, to swagger; wohlwollen, to wish well; hochachten, to esteem; werthschätzen, to esteem highly; gutsagen, to be security; gutmachen, to make amends for; freilassen, to release; genugthun, to satisfy; heimsuchen, to visit, punish; fehlschießen, to miss the mark; gleichkommen, to equal.

2. Verbs are formed by composition of verbs with particles, which stand in relation of qualifying words to the general meaning of the verbs, and are, therefore, in the conjugation, separated, like sub. 1; as ein= und ausgehen, to go in and out; ich gehe ein und aus, I go in and out; ich bin ein= und ausgegangen, I have gone in and out: thus, also, auf= und absteigen, to mount and descend; ab= und zunehmen, to increase and decrease.

Obs. In this case the stress lies so strongly on the particle, that the verb almost sinks down into the meaning of a suffix, and is often entirely left out, as die Thür ist zu (*i. e.* gemacht), the door is shut; ich muß hin (*i. e.* gehen), I must go thither; sie ist fort (*i. e.* gelaufen), she is run away; es ist vorbei (*i. e.* gegangen), it is all over.

3. Verbs are formed by coalescence of verbs with substantives and qualitative adverbs, *conveying a new idea;* they are treated like verbs simple, as

handhaben, to handle; luſtwandeln, to promenade; muthmaßen, to conjecture; wehklagen, to lament; wetterleuchten, to lighten; willfahren, to comply with; liebkoſen, to caress; rechtfertigen, to justify; for instance, ich rechtfertige, I justify; ich habe gerechtfertigt, I have justified.

Obs. Verbs like wallfahrten, to go on a pilgrimage; wetteifern, to emulate; argwöhnen, to suspect, &c., are not compounded verbs, but derivative verbs from compound substantives—Wallfahrt, pilgrimage; Wetteifer, emulation; Argwohn, suspicion.

4. Verbs are, lastly, formed by composition of verbs with prepositions used adverbially, and with qualitative adverbs which have lost their clear definite meaning; the accent rests on the verbal component, and the signification of the adverb, which has adopted the nature of a prefix, is entirely merged in the verb. These compounds are inseparable; for instance, durchle'ſen, to peruse; uma'rmen, to embrace; unterſchrei'ben, to sign; überſe'tzen, to translate; hinterge'hen, to deceive; widerſpre'chen, to contradict; wiederho'len, to repeat; volle'nden, to finish; for instance, ich volle'nde, I finish; ich habe volle'ndet, I have finished.

CHAP. VI.—ON THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

1. Adjectives can be used as adverbs—

a. Without any change in their radical form, as gut, goodly; ſchlecht, badly.

b. In the forms of their cases, as (1) of the pure genitive—anders, otherwise; rechts, on the right; links, on the left; ſtets, constantly; bereits, already; beſonders, particularly; unverſehens, unawares; ver-

gebens, in vain; eilends, in haste; stillschweigends, silently; durchgehends, throughout; nachgehends, afterwards: (2) of the genitive with a t, as einst (equal to eins), once; dereinst, once in future; mittelst, by means of; nebst, together with (equal to nebens): (3) of the genitive in en with an s, as übrigens, besides; erstens, firstly, &c.; höchstens, at the utmost; schönstens, in the most beautiful manner; meistens, mostly; nächstens, next; letztens, lately.

c. In connexion with a preposition, as bei weitem, by far; von neuem, anew; im Ganzen, altogether; am längsten, longest; zum zweiten, secondly; zugleich, at the same time; zumeist, mostly; zuletzt, at last; zuvörderst, first of all; entzwei (*i.e.* in zwei), asunder; überall, everywhere; fürwahr, forsooth; insbesondere, particularly; insgesammt, altogether; vollauf, in plenty; geradezu, straight on; kurzum, in short.

2. Substantives can be used adverbially (*a*) in the genitive case, as des Tages, by day; Morgens, in the morning; Abends, of an evening; and, according to the same analogy, Nachts or des Nachts, in the night; des Mittwochs, of a Wednesday; des Sonntags, of a Sunday; gerades Weges, straightway; keinesweges, by no means; anfangs, at first; flugs, speedily; spornstreichs, at the spur of the moment; mehrentheils, generally; falls, in case; allenfalls, at all events; meines Wissens, as far as I know; jederzeit, at all times; derweile, mittlerweile, meanwhile; dergestalt, in such a (form) manner; dermaßen, in such a (measure) way; meinerseits, for my part; diesseits, on this side; dieser Tage, in these days; instead of allerdinge is said allerdings, to be sure; and thus, also, schlechterdings, by all means; neuerdings, lately; bisweilen, zuweilen, sometimes; allenthalben, everywhere; meinethalben, for my

sake: (*b*) in the accusative, as allezeit, at all times; wechselweise, alternately; scherzweise, by way of jest; einmal, once; einigemal, several times; jedesmal, each time: (*c*) with prepositions, as inskünftige, in future; insgemein, generally; heutzutage, now-a-days; anstatt, instead; zurück, back; mit Fleiß, purposely; bergauf, up the mountain; unterweges, on the road; vormals, formerly; abseits, aside; hinterrücks, from behind; abhanden, (not at hand) lost; mit Recht, justly; vor der Hand, for the present; vorhanden, in existence; zurecht, aright; zumal, especially; ohne Zweifel, without doubt; übermorgen, a day after to-morrow; übers Land, into the country; himmelan, heavenward; bergunter, downhill; waldein, into the forest; jahrein, jahraus, from one year to another.

3. Verbs are often used as adverbs, as geschweige, (*i.e.* ich geschweige dessen, I am silent of that) to say nothing of; halt, (*i.e.* ich halte dafür, I am of that opinion) certainly; behüte, bewahre! (understand Gott, God) God beware! will's Gott, if God wills; Gott lob! God be praised! gelt, (imperative of gelten, or understand laß, let it pass) truly.

4. Pronouns have adverbial meaning (*a*) in some derivatives from old roots, as hin, thither; her, hither; hinnen, hence; da, there; dann, then; dort, yonder; wo, where, &c.: (*b*) in some pronominal compounds, as daher, from there; wohin, where to, &c.: (*c*) in compounds of pronouns and prepositions, as indessen, meanwhile; überdies, besides; demnach, therefore: (*d*) in compounds of pronominal adverbs with prepositions, as vorher, before; mithin, therefore; darein, there into; davon, from it; wozu, what for; warum? why? somit, accordingly; sonach, consequently.

5. Adverbs are derived from other words by the

suffixes en, lich, ing, wärts, as (*a*) außen, without; innen, within; oben, above; unten, below: (*b*) kühnlich, boldly; ewiglich, eternally; höchlich, highly; sicherlich, surely; treulich, faithfully; freilich, certainly; wahrlich, truly; kürzlich, shortly; neulich, lately; schwerlich, hardly; gänzlich, entirely.

Obs. In eigentlich, really, namentlich, namely, and öffentlich, publicly, a t has been inserted before lich.

(*c.*) Before the suffix ing an l is always inserted, and sometimes an s added after g, as blindlings, blindfully; jählings, precipitously; köpflings, headlong.

(*d.*) With wärts derivatives are formed from particles and nouns, as auf- und abwärts, upwards and downwards; ein- und auswärts, inwards and outwards; niederwärts, downwards; vorwärts, forwards; heimwärts, homewards; seitwärts, sideways; rückwärts, backwards; ostwärts, eastwards; himmelwärts, towards Heaven.

6. Adverbs are also formed by a composition of two or more adverbs, as insofern, in so far; nichts desto weniger, nevertheless; gleichwohl, however; vielleicht, perhaps.

CHAP. VII.—ON THE FORMATION OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. Real prepositions are (*a*) simple adverbs, as an, on; auf, upon; aus, out; bei, by; durch, through; für, for; in, in; mit, with; nach, after; ohne, without; seit, since; um, around; von, from; zu, to: (*b*) derivatives, as außer, without, except; hinter, behind (from hin and dar, *i. e.* von hier dahin, from here to there); über (from ob), over; unter, under; wider, against; sonder, without; sammt, together; binnen, within: (*c*) compounds, as anstatt, instead of.

2. Some prepositions are forms of substantives, as gegen, towards; halb, halben, halber (from the old word Halbe, *i. e.* side), sake; wegen, on account; zufolge, in consequence of; kraft, by the strength of; laut, according to; mittels, by means of; diesseit, on this side; statt, instead; trotz, in spite; willen, for the sake.

3. A few prepositions are adjective forms, as neben (*i.e.* in—eben), near; zwischen (zwei, two), between; gemäß, according; längs, along; nächst, next to; ungeachtet, (not esteemed) notwithstanding; unfern, unweit, not far from; während, during.

CHAP. VIII.—ON THE FORMATION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Conjunctions are either roots, as auch, also; weil, because; denn, for; dann, then; so, thus; wohl, well; als, as; wie, how; wenn, if; or

2. They are derivatives, as nämlich, namely; ferner, further; erstens, firstly; übrigens, besides; endlich, at last; schließlich, in conclusion; bevor, before; or

3. They are compounds, as vielmehr, rather; gleichwohl, however; einerseits, anderseits, on one side, on the other side; obschon, wiewohl, although; damit, in order that; sonach, in consequence; überdies, besides, &c.

Obs. 1. Only few words are pure conjunctions, they are: und, and; aber, sondern, but; daß, that; weder, neither; noch, nor; entweder, either; oder, or; weil, because; ob, whether.

Obs. 2. All other conjunctions are adverbs or prepositions; and they are—

a. Either *absolute*, without reference to what precedes or follows, as erstens, ferner; theils—theils, partly—partly; zuvörderst, first of all, &c.: or

b. Demonstrative, as dann, then; deßhalb, darum, on that account; indeſſen, meanwhile; zwar, it is true (es iſt wahr); doch, still; dennoch, nevertheless, &c.: or

c. Relative, as ehe, bevor, before; während, whilst; wo, where; wie, how; weil, because, &c.

Obs. 3. The demonstrative and relative conjunctions stand in a correlative relation to each other; for instance,

da, there	daher, thence	dahin, thither	dann, then
wo, where	woher, whence	wohin, whither	wann, when

darum, on that account	dadurch, thereby
warum, on which account	wodurch, whereby

ſo, so	ſo, so	dennoch, notwithstanding
wie, as	daß, that	obgleich, although

deßhalb, on that account	darum, therefore
weil, because	daß, that.

PART III.—SYNTAX.

SECTION I.—ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS IN GERMAN SENTENCES.

CHAP. I.—ON THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF SENTENCES.

§ 1. MAIN OR CHIEF AND SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

1. SENTENCES, the audible or visible expressions of our thoughts, are either independent of each other, and then they are called main or chief sentences; for instance, ich will selbst gehen, ich will die Sache selbst untersuchen, ich will mein eigenes Urtheil bilden, I will go myself, I will examine the affair myself, I will form my own opinion.

2. Or they are depending on other sentences, and then they are called subordinate sentences; for instance, ich will selbst gehen, ob ich die Sache vielleicht selbst untersuchen kann, damit ich mein eigenes Urtheil bilde, I will go myself, if I perchance could examine the affair myself, that I might form my own opinion. Of these three sentences, the first is independent, and therefore a chief sentence; the second is depending on, and therefore subordinate to, the first; and the third depends on the second, and is therefore subordinate to it.

§ 2. ON THE FORM OF SENTENCES.

1. Sentences are called simple when the verb stands in a simple tense, *i. e.* present or imperfect; for instance, ich schenke dir ein Buch, I make you a present of a book; ich gab ihm die Hand, I gave him my hand.

2. Sentences are called compounded when the verb stands in one of the six compounded tenses; for instance, ich habe gegeben, I have given.

3. Subordinate sentences, being dependent on others, are connected with them by words which point out this dependence. Those words are relative pronouns or relative particles, and from these relative connecting words subordinate sentences are also called relative sentences; for instance, ich weiß nicht, wie ich es lernen kann, I do not know how I can learn it. Of these two sentences, the first is the chief; and the second, the subordinate, beginning with the relative particle wie, *how*, is also called the relative sentence.

4. Relative sentences do not only refer to other sentences, but they also supply a part of them; for instance, in ich glaube nicht, daß du mich täuschest, I do not think that you deceive me, the second, or relative sentence, supplies the accusative or object to the chief sentence. Such relative sentences, which supply the object to a chief sentence, are therefore called objective sentences.

5. If the relative sentence supplies the nominative or subject to a chief sentence, it is called a subjective sentence; for instance, daß die Erde rund ist, wird von keinem bezweifelt, that the earth is round, is doubted by no one. In this case the first sentence, connected

by the relative conjunction daß with the second, its chief sentence, forms its nominative or subject.

6. Relative sentences, supplying the part of an attribute of the subject or object in chief sentences, are called attributive or adjective sentences; for instance, in ich kaufte das Buch, welches du empfahlst, I bought the book which you recommended; the second sentence, beginning with the relative pronoun welches, supplies the part of an adjective of the object Buch in the first, the chief sentence.

7. Relative sentences which supply the part of an adverb for chief sentences, are called adverbial sentences; for instance, in er arbeitete, während die andern schliefen, he worked whilst all the others were sleeping; the second sentence beginning with the relative adverb während, supplies the adverb of time to the first, the chief sentence, and is therefore an adverbial sentence.

8. Thus six classes of sentences are to be remarked; namely, two for chiefs and subordinates, simple and compounded; and besides four for subordinate sentences, subjective, objective, attributive, and adverbial.

CHAP. II.—ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS IN GERMAN SENTENCES.

§ 1. IN CHIEF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

1. When the nominative begins a sentence, the verb must immediately follow; for instance, ich war gestern in der Stadt, I yesterday was in town.

2. When the objects of a sentence, the accusative and dative, are personal pronouns, they must directly follow the verb; for instance, ich gab es ihm mit Vergnügen, I gave it him with pleasure.

3. When the objects are substantives, they can follow the verb immediately, or be preceded by adverbs; for instance, ich las dieses Buch in zwei Stunden, or ich las in zwei Stunden dieses Buch, I read this book in two hours.

4. When the objects are names of persons and things, those of persons precede those of things; for instance, ich gab dem Kinde den Apfel, I gave the apple to the child: but when the objects are personal pronouns, the accusative precedes the dative, as ich schrieb es ihm, I wrote it to him; ich empfahl sie Euch, I recommended her to you.

5. The negative particle nicht, not, stands last when it refers to the whole sentence; but when it only denies one word, it precedes this word; for instance, ich schrieb ihm diesen Brief nicht, I did not write him this letter; but, ich schrieb nicht ihm diesen Brief, it was not to him that I wrote this letter; or nicht ich schrieb ihm diesen Brief, it was not I that wrote him this letter; or ich schrieb ihm nicht diesen Brief, it was not this letter that I wrote to him.

6. The adverb of time precedes the adverb of place, as ich lebte zu der Zeit auf dem Lande, I lived at that time in the country.

7. When the verb is separable, the particle stands last, as ich las ihm dieses Buch laut vor, I read to him this book aloud.

8. When the sentence contains as copula the auxiliaries sein or werden, and, as predicate, an adjective, this must stand at the end of the sentence; for instance, ich war wirklich gestern nicht ganz wohl, I was, indeed, not quite well yesterday; er war mir vor allen der liebste, he was the dearest to me before all; sie wurde bei dieser Nachricht recht böse, she became very

angry at this news; wir werden in dieser schönen Jahreszeit jeden Tag gesünder, we grow better every day at this beautiful time of the year.

9. When an adverb begins a sentence the construction is inverted, and the verb placed before the nominative; for instance, dort war ich glücklich, there I was happy.

Obs. 1. When the adverb only refers to the subject, and not to the whole sentence, the inversion, of course, cannot take place; for instance, nicht er that es, it was not he that did it; auch ich war zugegen, I also was present.

Obs. 2. Two adverbs can only begin a sentence, when one qualifies the other; for instance, schon damals war es mein Wunsch, it was already my wish; des Morgens früh stand ich auf, I got up early in the morning; auf dem Schiffe, in der Cajüte, wurde es gefunden, it was found in the ship's cabin.

But when the adverbs stand in a co-ordinate relation to each other, they never can begin a German sentence; for instance, *at this place, then, it happened*, must not be translated, an diesem Orte dann geschah es. The adverbs, in this case, must be separated, and one placed after the verb, either—an diesem Orte geschah es dann; or, dann geschah es an diesem Orte.

Obs. 3. When two or more adverbial sentences are connected by the conjunctions und, and, aber, but, the inverted construction is only observed in the first; for instance, gestern traf er mich, und ich grüßte ihn (not und grüßte ich ihn), yesterday he met me, and I saluted him; auf dem Lande waren sie die ganze Zeit, aber sie wurden (not wurden sie) nicht vom Wetter begünstigt, they were the whole time in the country, but were not favoured by the weather.

10. Adverbs are either represented:

1. By single words, as hier, here; da, there; so, thus;—or

2. By several words which, combined, form an adverbial expression. Such expressions are conveyed:

a. By objects of verbs; for instance, er schlug den Hund, he beat the dog. The object, den Hund, explaining the meaning of the verb schlug, may therefore be called an adverbial expression.

b. By genitives and accusatives implying the idea of time, place, or mode; for instance, des Tages, by day; jedes Jahr, every year; der Gestalt, in that manner.

c. By prepositions with their cases; for instance, zu der Zeit, at that time; an diesem Orte, in this place.

3. An adverb can also be expressed by a whole sentence which, referring to a chief sentence, supplies the adverb or the object of that sentence; for instance, in the two sentences, er las, während ich schrieb, he read, whilst I was writing, the second is the adverb for the first; and likewise in the two sentences, ich glaube nicht, daß du mich täuschest, the second, as the objective sentence, can be considered as an adverbial explanation of the first.

Now the rule of the inverted construction of chief sentences remains good, in whatever shape the adverb precedes; for instance, hier lebte ich glücklich, here I lived happily; alle Menschen liebe ich, I love all mankind; des Nachts reise ich nicht oft, I do not often travel by night; während er schlief, schrieb ich den Brief, whilst he was sleeping, I wrote the letter; daß du mich täuschest, glaube ich nie, that you deceive me, I never believe.

Obs. When the adverbial sentence precedes, and the chief sentence follows, the latter often begins with the adverb so, which, in some measure, resumes the whole

adverbial sentence into one word; for instance, da dieses nicht geändert werden kann, so will ich schweigen, since this cannot be changed, I will keep silent.

11. The inverted construction takes place besides:

a. In interrogative sentences; for instance, warst du im Zimmer? Were you in the room? And when such sentences are pointed out by interrogative adverbs, these stand at the head, and the verb, preceding the subject, follows; for instance, warum kamst du so spät? Why did you come so late?

b. In sentences expressing a wish, and in exclamatory sentences, particularly when containing the adverb doch, which appeals to a formed opinion of the addressing or addressed person; for instance, wollte Gott, er käme bald! would to God that he came soon! dachte ich's doch! I certainly thought so! kenne ich doch kaum Eure Gesetze! you know I am scarcely acquainted with your laws!

c. In inserted sentences, exactly like *sometimes* in English and French; for instance, meine Geduld, fuhr mein Sohn fort, &c., my patience, continued my son.

§ 2. IN CHIEF COMPOUNDED SENTENCES.

1. In chief compounded sentences the participles and infinitives stand last; for instance, ich habe es gesagt, I have said it; ich würde ihnen das Buch schicken, I would send them the book; ich werde dann den Brief geschrieben haben, I shall then have written the letter.

2. The arrangement of all other words remains exactly as in simple sentences; for instance,

Ich bin gestern in der Stadt gewesen, I was yesterday in town.

Ich hatte es ihm mit Vergnügen gegeben, I had given it to him with pleasure.

Ich würde dieses Buch in zwei Stunden gelesen haben, I should have read this book in two hours.

Ich werde ihm nicht diesen Brief schreiben, I shall not write him this letter.

Ich habe zu der Zeit auf dem Lande gelebt, I lived in the country at that time.

Ich würde ihm nicht dieses Buch vorgelesen haben, I should not have read to him this book.

Sie war in der Stadt nicht so heiter gewesen, she had not been so cheerful in town.

Dort werde ich glücklich sein, there I shall be happy.

Während er schläft, werde ich meinen Brief schreiben, whilst he is sleeping, I shall write my letter.

Alle meine Feinde würde ich dann besiegt haben, I should then have conquered all my enemies.

Hast du den Diener fortgeschickt? have you sent away the servant?

Wann wird er wieder kommen? when will he come again?

Hattet Ihr es doch früher gewußt! I am sure you had known it before!

Das, hat er gesagt, wird nie verwirklicht werden, that, he has said, will never be realized.

§ 3. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

1. In subordinate sentences the verb stands last; for instance,

Der Mann, welcher mit mir sprach, the man who spoke to me; daß er krank ist, war mir unbekannt, I was not aware that he was ill.

Ich weiß, daß er nicht mehr lebt, I know that he lives no longer.

Ich irre mich, wenn es mehr als zwei Pfund beträgt,

I am mistaken, if it amounts to more than two pounds.

2. When the verb is compounded, the infinitives and participles precede the verb finite; for instance,

Der Mann, welcher so etwas sagen wird, the man who will say such a thing.

Daß er krank gewesen ist, war mir unbekannt, it was unknown to me that he had been ill.

Ich weiß, daß er nicht länger gelebt haben würde, I know that he would not have lived any longer.

Ich irre mich, wenn es mehr als zwei Pfund betragen hat, I am mistaken, if it has amounted to more than two pounds.

Obs. 1. In compounded subordinate sentences, the auxiliaries haben and sein can be omitted, to avoid the accumulation of many verbal forms; for instance, ich weiß nicht, wie er das angefangen, I do not know how he *has* contrived this; ich zweifle, ob der Brief an den rechten Mann überbracht worden, I doubt whether the letter has been delivered to the right person.

Obs. 2. If more than one verbal form precede the verb finite (*i.e.* the auxiliary), in this case the construction is changed, as if the sentence were not subordinate; for instance, ich glaube, daß er würde gesehen worden sein, I think he would have been seen; du schreibst, daß er ihn besser würde reiten gelehrt haben, you write, that he would have taught him better how to ride.

3. In conditional sentences, like wenn er kommt, if he comes, the conditional particle can be left out; but then the construction must be inverted; for instance, kommt er, werde ich mit ihm sprechen, if he comes, I'll speak to him; kommt er nicht, werde ich ihm schreiben, if he does not come, I'll write to him.

4. Subjective and objective sentences, when follow-

ing a chief sentence, and introduced by the conjunction daß, can lose this particle; but then they are construed like chief sentences; for instance, es ist gewiß, er kommt heute nicht, instead of daß er heute nicht kommt, it is certain that he will not come to-day; ich höre, er kann nicht abreisen, instead of daß er nicht abreisen kann, I hear that he cannot depart.

5. An interrogation, when introduced as dependent upon a chief sentence, is called an indirect question, and treated like a subordinate sentence, as er fragte mich, warum ich das gethan habe, he asked me why I had done it.

6. When the subordinate sentence in English contains a participle, and is shortened by having the nominative and verb omitted, the whole sentence, in German, can be treated as an adjective of that substantive to which it refers; for instance, a man beloved by God and men, ein von Gott und Menschen geliebter Mann; a town visited by many strangers, eine von vielen Fremden besuchte Stadt; a child loving his parents, ein seine Eltern liebendes Kind; the pest sparing neither man nor beast, die weder Menschen noch Thiere verschonende Pest.

Obs. 1. The English *in order* is, in German, the relative particle um; it is, like in English, construed with the infinitive, and preceded by zu, *to:* but sentences, beginning with um, being subordinate and adverbial, the infinitive with zu must stand last; for instance, ich ging aus, um die Zeitung zu lesen, I went out, in order to read the newspaper; um ihn zu sehen, stand ich früh auf, in order to see him, I got up early. This um, if not very emphatic, can also be omitted, as ich gehe aus, die neuen Häuser zu sehen, I go out to see the new houses.

Obs. 2. All infinitive phrases, like—to speak loudly, to

eat temperately, to work diligently, have, in German, the infinitive last, being all shortened subordinate sentences, therefore—laut sprechen, mäßig essen, fleißig arbeiten.

Obs. 3. The English subordinate sentences, introduced by *how* with the infinitive and *to*, must, when rendered in German, change the infinitive and *to* into a verb finite; for instance, I do not know how to convince him, ich weiß nicht wie ich ihn überzeuge, or überzeugen soll.

SECTION II.—ON THE USE OF NOUNS IN SENTENCES.

CHAP. I.—ON THE USE OF THE ARTICLES.

1. The articles must agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns before which they stand; for instance, der Vater, the father; die Mutter, the mother; das Kind, the child; ein guter Mann, a good man; die schönen Blumen, the beautiful flowers.

2. When the subject (or object) is represented by more than one noun of the same gender, it is sufficient to give the first noun only an article, as der Löwe, Tiger, Wolf sind reißende Thiere, the lion, tiger, wolf are ravenous beasts.

3. But if the nouns are of different genders, each must have its own article, as der Fuchs und die Schlange sind schlau, the fox and serpent are cunning; ich habe das Haus, den Garten und die Wiese gekauft, I have bought the house, the garden, and the meadow.

4. If the nouns imply different stations, ages, and numbers of things or persons, the article must be repeated before each, as der Fürst, der Edelmann, der Bauer und der Kaufmann, sie haben alle ihre Pflichten, the prince, nobleman, peasant, and merchant, they

have all their duties; der Vater und der Sohn waren in dem Garten, father and son were in the garden; die Mutter und die Töchter gingen aus, the mother and the daughters went out.

5. Hence the difference between der Kaiser und der König, the emperor and the king, implying two persons —and der Kaiser und König, the emperor and king, implying one person. Thus, also, der Fürst und der Bischof, the prince and the bishop; but, der Fürst und Bischof, the prince and bishop.

6. The definite article stands before names of materials and animals, if the whole matter and species are implied; for instance, das Wasser ist eins der vier Elemente, water is one of the four elements; das Eisen ist oft kostbarer als das Silber, iron is often more precious than silver; das Pferd, das Schaf, der Hund und das Rind sind Hausthiere, horses, sheep, dogs, and cattle are domestic animals; der Mensch ist sterblich, man is mortal; die Menschen sollten sich wie Brüder lieben, men ought to love each other like brothers.

7. The definite article stands before names of abstract things, if their whole essence is expressed, or if they are represented as personal beings, as die Lüge und der Müssiggang sind aller Laster Anfang, lying and idleness are the beginning of all vices; die Freundschaft erhöhet das Glück und mindert das Elend, friendship improves happiness and abates misery; der Tod selbst ist nicht fürchterlich, death itself is not terrible.

8. The definite article stands before the names of sciences, and of many countries of the feminine gender, as die Geschichte, history; die Mathematik, mathematics; die Philosophie, philosophy; die Jurisprudenz, law; die Theologie, theology, &c.: die Schweiz, Switzerland; die Türkei, Turkey; die Krimm, Crimea;

die Lausitz, Lusatia; die Wallachei, Wallachia; die Moldau, Moldavia, &c.

9. The definite article is often put before a noun, in order clearly to point out the difference of subject and object; for instance, Caesar hat den Brutus geliebt, und doch tödtete Brutus den Caesar, Cæsar loved Brutus, and yet Brutus killed Cæsar.

10. The definite article stands before some particular words, which have no article in English, as die Regierung, government; in der Stadt, in town; in der Kirche, in church; in der Schule, in school; er geht auf die Börse, he goes to change; in die Schule, to school; in die Kirche, to church; das befreite Jerusalem, Jerusalem delivered; die heilige Schrift, Holy Writ; der heilige Petrus, Paulus, u.s.w., St. Peter, Paul, &c.; particularly before the superlative meist, most, as die meisten Menschen, most men; das Meiste davon haben wir gehört, most of it we have heard.

11. In some cases the article is omitted in German where it is found in English, as the East Indies, Ostindien; the West Indies, Westindien; diese Anstrengungen waren Ursache an meiner Erhaltung, these exertions were *the* cause of my preservation; er hatte Schuld an meinem Unglücke, he was *the* cause of my misfortune. This is particularly observed after prepositions before an adjective with its substantive; for instance, ein Mensch von gutem Herzen, a man of *a* good heart; ich fand ihn in erwünschtem Zustande, I found him in *an* excellent condition; auf freiem Felde, in *the* open field; in weiterem Sinne, in *a* larger sense; zu rechter Zeit, at *the* right time; mit höchster Anstrengung, with *the* highest exertion.

12. The article often stands before names of relations and members of the human body, where a

pronoun possessive is found in English, as ich that alles, um den Vater zu befriedigen, I did every thing to give satisfaction to *my* father; das ganze Volk war auf den Beinen, the whole people were on *their* legs.

13. When the genitive is placed before the nominative, the latter has, like in English, no article; for instance, des Vaters Freund, my father's friend. Therefore it is also said: der Blumen schönste, *the* most beautiful of flowers. And when a preposition precedes, the genitive also is often used without article, as durch Freundes Hand, through *the* hand of *a* friend; mit Vaters Zustimmung, with *my* father's consent.

14. The German article is placed differently from what it is in English in the following instances: die halbe Zahl, half *the* number; ein halbes Glas, half *a* glass; in einer so kurzen Zeit, in so short *a* time; ein so kluges Kind, so clever a child; ein solches Herz, such a heart.

15. Some prepositions standing before the dative and accusative cases of the definite article, coalesce with them so as to form one word; such contractions are thirteen in number:

am (an dem) } on the	ins (in das), into the
ans (an das) } on the	übers (über das), over the
aufs (auf das), upon the	ums (um das), around the
beim (bei dem), by the	vom (von dem), of the
durchs (durch das), through the	zum (zu dem) } to the.
fürs (für das), for the	zur (zu der) } to the.
im (in dem), in the	

For instance, am Ufer, ans Ufer, on the shore; aufs Land, upon land; beim Feuer, at the fire; durchs Wasser, through the water; fürs Vaterland, for the country; im Zimmer, in the room; ins Dickicht, into the thicket; übers Meer, over the sea; ums Auge, around the eye;

vom Hause, of the house; zum Bruder, to the brother; zur Schwester, to the sister.

16. The indefinite article, occasionally used in English before *few* and *hundred*, is omitted in German, as einige Stunden, a few hours; hundert und acht, a hundred and eight.

CHAP. II.—ON THE USE OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 1. ON THE USE OF SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

The use of the singular and plural in German agrees with that of the English language except in two instances.

1. If in German the substantive expresses the mere form of number, weight, and measure, and contains, at the same time, the things numbered, weighed, and measured, it stands after numeral words in the singular, and not in the plural; for instance, fünf Acker, five acres (not Aecker); hundert Fuß lang, a hundred feet long (not Füße); zehn Zoll breit, ten inches broad; vier Loth, four half-ounces; drei hundert Mann Rekruten, three hundred recruits; fünf Stück Seide, five pieces of silk; drei Paar Handschuhe, three pairs of gloves.

Obs. Brautpaar, bridal couple, which does not express number, has therefore a plural, and two br dal couples is, in German, zwei Brautpaare.

Exceptions of the given rule are (*a*) feminine substantives in e, as sechs Ellen, six yards; zwei Tonnen Zucker, two tons of sugar; drei Kannen Wein, six quarts of wine; acht Unzen Pfeffer, eight ounces of pepper; drei Metzen Schoten, three pecks of green peas: (*b*) names of coins, as drei Pfennige, three pence; sechs Groschen, six groschen: (*c*) names of sections of time, as zwanzig Minuten, twenty minutes; drei Stunden, three hours; acht Tage, eight days, &c.; however, it is

not rare to find the singular of Jahr and Monat instead of the plural, as drei Jahr und zwei Monat, three years and two months: (*d*) the two synonymous words Kopf and Haupt, head, when referring to inanimate things, follow the rule, as zwanzig Kopf Kohl, twenty heads of cabbage; but, when relating to men or beasts, they are used in plural, as zwei hundert Köpfe, two hundred heads (*i.e.* of men); funfzehn Häupter, fifteen heads (*i.e.* of cattle).

2. The neuter singular, in German, often expresses a plural number, as so manches sah ich, I saw so many things; Menschen, Thiere, Sachen, alles verbrannte, men, beasts, things, all were burnt.

§ 2. ON SUBSTANTIVES IN APPOSITION.

If two substantives are so connected, that the second refers as a predicate to the first, then the second is said to be in apposition to the first, and always stands with it in the same case in German; for instance, Heinrich der achte war ein tyrannischer Mann, Henry the Eighth was a despot; die Werke Friedrichs des Großen, the works of Frederick the Great; ich gab das Buch dem jungen Herrn, einem Bruder Ihres Freundes, I gave the book to the young gentleman, a brother of your friend; er schickte den Brief an die Dame, eine Nachbarin von uns, he sent the letter to the lady, a neighbour of ours.

§ 3. ON THE USE OF THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

1. The nominative case stands after the verbs sein, to be; werden, to become; bleiben, to remain; scheinen, to seem; heißen, to be called.

2. After all verbs passive, the actives of which are construed with a double accusative, as man nennt ihn einen großen Mann, they call him a great man; er wird ein großer Mann genannt, he is called a great man.

Obs. If one of the two accusatives which, in Latin and English, follow a verb active, is a predicate to the other, and expressed in German by a preposition with its case, this remains unaltered in the passive; for instance, man wählte ihn zum Kaiser, they elected him emperor; er wurde zum Kaiser erwählt, he was elected emperor: ich habe es zum Gesetz gemacht, I have laid it down as a rule; es ist von mir zum Gesetz gemacht worden, it has been laid down by me as a rule: sie erklärten ihn für einen Verräther, they declared him (to be) a traitor; er wurde von ihnen für einen Verräther erklärt, he was declared by them (to be) a traitor.

§ 4. ON THE USE OF THE GENITIVE.

1. The genitive stands—

a. After verbs which require an accusative of the person, and a supplementary object in genitive for the thing; such are:

anklagen, to accuse; for instance, er klagt ihn des Undanks an, he accuses him of ingratitude.

belehren, to inform, in the phrases—eines Bessern belehren, to correct one's information; eines Andern belehren, to convey a different information: else it is construed with über and accusative of the thing; for instance, sie belehrte ihn über den Zustand der Familie, she informed him of the state of the family.

berauben, to deprive; for instance, er beraubte mich meines Geldes, he deprived me of my money.

beschuldigen, to charge with; for instance, man beschuldigte den Mann eines großen Verbrechens, they charged that man with a great crime.

entbinden, to release, as du entbandest mich meines Versprechens, you released me from my promise.

entheben, to release, as du bist der Mühe enthoben, you are released from the trouble.

entladen and entlasten, to rid, as ich habe mich seiner endlich entladen, I have, at last, rid myself of him.

entlassen, to dismiss, as den Diener des Dienstes entlassen, to dismiss a servant from one's service.

entledigen, to rid, as eines lästigen Menschen sich entledigen, to rid one's-self of a troublesome man.

entsetzen, to deprive, as des Amtes entsetzen, to deprive of an office.

entwöhnen, to wean, as des Spiels (but also vom Spiele) sich entwöhnen, to wean one's-self from gambling.

lossprechen, to acquit, as einen der Anschuldigung lossprechen, to acquit one of a charge.

überführen, to convict, as einen der Theilnahme überführen, to convict one of participation.

überheben, to release, as einen der Mühe überheben, to release one from trouble.

überzeugen, to convince, in the phrase eines Andern überzeugen, to convince of the truth of another matter; but generally with von and dative, as er überzeugte mich von seiner Aufrichtigkeit, he convinced me of his sincerity.

versichern, to assure, as du versicherst mich deiner Freundschaft, you assure me of your friendship; for this can also be used the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, as du versicherst mir deine Freundschaft. The latter construction is always preferred when an objective sentence follows, as er versicherte mir, daß er mich nie verlassen werde, he assured me he would never forsake me.

verweisen, to expel, only in the phrase—einen des Landes verweisen, to banish one.

würdigen, to honour with, as er würdigte mich seines Umganges, he honoured me with his familiar intercourse.

zeihen, to accuse, as einen der Mitschuld zeihen, to accuse one of participation in a crime.

b. After three verbs impersonal which, besides the accusative of the person, require a supplementary object in genitive; they are:

es erbarmt mich, I have pity, as es erbarmt mich dieses Mannes, I have pity on this man.

es jammert mich, I grieve for, as es jammert mich seiner, I grieve for him; this can also be expressed by a personal verb, as er jammert mich.

es reuet or gereuet mich, I repent, as es reuet mich dieser That (or, with a personal verb, diese That reuet mich), I repent this deed.

c. After verbs reflective, which have a personal pronoun for an object in accusative, and a supplementary object in genitive, as

sich annehmen, to interest one's-self; for instance, eines Kindes, in a child.

sich bedienen, to make use of, as des Beistandes, of the assistance.

sich befleißen or befleißigen, to apply one's-self, as des Studiums der Medicin, to the study of medicine.

sich begeben, to resign, as seines Rechtes, one's right.

sich bemächtigen and sich bemeistern, to occupy, to make one's-self master of, as eines Landes sich bemächtigen, to occupy a land; einer Wissenschaft sich bemeistern, to make one's-self master of a science.

sich besinnen, to recollect, only in the phrase—sich eines Bessern besinnen, to change one's mind; else with auf and accusative, as auf ein Wort, a word.

sich bescheiden, to yield, as eines Anspruches, a claim.

sich entäußern, to give up, as eines alten Vorrechts, an old privilege.

sich enthalten, to restrain one's-self, as eines Wortes, of saying a word.

sich entschlagen, to throw off, as sich aller trüben Gedanken entschlagen, to shake off all gloomy thoughts.

sich entsinnen, sich erinnern, to remember, as eines guten Einfalls, a good thought, idea.

sich erbarmen, to have compassion, as eines armen Kindes, on a poor child.

sich erdreisten, sich erkühnen, to make bold, as einer That, to dare to carry out an act.

sich erfrechen, to presume, as dessen, to do this.

sich erwehren, to keep off, as ich konnte mich seiner nicht erwehren, I could not keep him off.

sich rühmen, to boast, as seiner Ahnen, of one's ancestors.

sich schämen, to be ashamed, as einer Handlung, of an action.

sich unterfangen, sich unterwinden, sich vermessen, to dare, as einer solchen That, such a deed.

sich versehen, to expect, as eines Bessern, something better.

d. Some verbs neuter, and a few actives used like neuter, are construed with a genitive, or a preposition and its case, such are:

achten, to pay attention, as sie achten meines Wortes (or, auf mein Wort), they listen to my word.

bedürfen, to be in need, as der Theilnahme, of sympathy.

brauchen, to want, as ich brauche deiner or dich nicht, I do not want you.

gebrauchen, to use, as gebrauche der or die Zeit, use your time well.

mißbrauchen, to abuse, as einer and eine Wohlthat, a kindness.

denken, gedenken, to remember, as gedenke mein, remember me.

entbehren, entrathen, to do without, as ich kann seiner nicht entbehren or entrathen, I cannot do without him.

ermangeln, to lack, as des Verstandes, good sense.

erwähnen, to mention, as eines Freundes, a friend.

gewahren or wahrnehmen, to perceive, as eines Schiffes or ein Schiff, a ship.

harren, to wait, as besserer Zeiten or auf bessere Zeiten, for better times.

lachen, spotten, to laugh, as seiner Thorheit or über seine Thorheit, at his folly.

pflegen, to nurse, as eines Kranken or einen Kranken, a sick man.

schonen, to spare, as der Unglücklichen or die Unglücklichen, the unfortunate.

vergessen, to forget, as eines Freundes and einen Freund, a friend.

wahren, to guard, as eines Geheimnisses and ein Geheimniß, a secret.

walten, to administer, as eines Amtes, an office.

warten, to attend to, as seiner Pflichten, one's duties.

e. After a few other verbs, in particular phrases, as der Hoffnung leben, to live in the hope; des Glaubens sterben, to die in the belief—Hungers, to die from hunger, to starve; der Meinung, des Willens, guter Laune, sein, to be of opinion, to be willed, to be in good humour.

2. The genitive stands also as a supplementary object—*a.* after real adjectives, as

ansichtig, gewahr, having sight of, which are sometimes also construed with an accusative, as ich wurde seiner (ihn) ansichtig (gewahr), I got a sight of him.

bar, free, as alles Ehrgefühls bar, deprived of all feeling of honour.

bedürftig, benöthigt, in need, as des Beistandes, of assistance.

bewußt, conscious, which has, besides the genitive of the object, a personal pronoun in dative referring to the subject, as ich bin mir keiner bösen That bewußt, I am conscious of no evil deed.

einig, agreeing, in the phrase—eines Handels einig werden, to agree in a bargain.

eingedenk, mindful, as eines Versprechens, of a promise.

fähig, capable, as alles Edlen (or, zu allem Edlen), of every thing noble.

frei, free, as der Banden (or, von den Banden) frei, free from fetters.

froh, enjoying, as er wird nie seines Lebens froh, he never can enjoy his life. It is also construed with über and accusative, as über eine Nachricht froh werden, to rejoice at an intelligence.

gewärtig, expecting, as der Ankunft, the arrival.

gewiß, certain, as einer Sache, of a thing.

gewohnt, accustomed, as einer Behandlung, to a treatment; (also with accusative, as ich bin es gewohnt, I am accustomed to it; or with an and accusative, as an ein Benehmen, to a behaviour).

habhaft, in possession, as eines Besitzes habhaft werden, to come into possession of a property.

kundig, having knowledge, as ich bin der Mittel kundig, I know the means.

ledig, leer, los, free from, as der Sorgen, free from cares: particularly in compounds, as freudenleer, without joy: des Kummers los (or, as a compound), Kummerlos), free from grief; or with an accusative, as ich werde diesen Schmerz nie los, I am never free from

this pain; or with von and dative, as von einem Verbrechen lossprechen, to acquit of a crime.

mächtig, in possession of, as seiner Gefühle mächtig sein, to be master of one's feelings.

müde, tired, as eines Lebens, of a way of living; or with accusative, as ich bin es müde, I am tired of it.

quitt, quits, as eines Vertrages, free from an agreement.

satt, weary, as des Nichtsthuns, of doing nothing; or with accusative, as ich bin das Treiben satt, I am weary of this going on.

schuldig, guilty, as eines Vergehens, of a transgression.

sicher, sure, as ich bin seiner nie sicher, I am never sure of him.

theilhaft or theilhaftig, participant, as einer Wohlthat, of a benefit.

überdrüßig, disgusted, as einer Arbeit, with a work; also with accusative, as ich bin es überdrüßig, I am weary of it.

verdächtig, suspected, as eines Diebstahls, of a theft.

verlustig, deprived of, as der Ehre verlustig werden, to lose one's honour.

voll, full, particularly in compounds, as freudenvoll, full of joy.

werth, worth, as seines Vaterlandes, of one's country; also with accusative, as alles Zutrauen, of all confidence; and with the dative, when it means *dear*, as du bist mir werth, thou art dear to me.

würdig, worthy, as hoher Ehren, of high honours.

b. After all participles, present and past, of verbs which are construed with a genitive, as des Geldes entbehrend, being in need of money; der seines Dienstes entlassene Knecht, the servant dismissed from his service; ein der Eltern beraubtes Mädchen, a girl deprived of her parents: therefore it is also said, er ist des

Todes verblichen, he has expired (since verbleichen and sterben are construed with the genitive of Tod and Hunger); des Landes verwiesen, expelled from one's country.

3. After substantives stands a partitive genitive—

a. When they imply number, measure, or weight, as eine Menge süßer Aepfel, a number of sweet apples; eine Kanne frischer Milch, two quarts of fresh milk; drei Pfund grünen Thees, three pounds of green tea.

Obs. 1. In many cases the genitive partitive is mistaken for a nominative or accusative, particularly when no adjective or article precedes a substantive of the feminine gender, or of the plural number; for instance, ein Glas Milch, a glass of milk; eine Menge Menschen, a number of people.

Obs. 2. Misled by the seeming likeness of a genitive partitive to a nominative or accusative, the German usage has—contrary to all grammatical justice—in many instances really adopted the nominative or accusative case instead of the genitive, and, in common language, it is now said: fünf Acker Land, five acres of land; vier Unzen Thee, four ounces of tea; drei Pfund Fleisch, three pounds of meat; sechs Buch Papier, six quires of paper; zehn Stück Tuch, ten pieces of cloth; zwei Tonnen Zucker, two tons of sugar; funfzehn Maaß Wein, fifteen pints of wine; vier Glas Bier, four glasses of beer; diese Art Wein, this kind of wine.

Obs. 3. Equally irregular is the use of a nominative or accusative of names of months, instead of the genitive, in phrases expressing the date by means of an ordinal number followed by the month; for instance, heute ist der dreißigste August (instead of des Augusts), to-day is the thirtieth of August; den ersten November werde ich kommen (instead of des Novembers), I shall come the first of November.

4. A qualitative genitive follows substantives, to show of what material or quality the objects expressed by them are, as Stufen Erzes, pieces of ore;

Barren Goldes, bars of gold; ein Held edlen Sinnes, a hero of noble mind. But instead of this genitive, generally von with the dative is substituted, as ein Tisch von Holz, a table of wood; ein Mann von Muth, a man of courage; eine Sache von großer Wichtigkeit, an affair of great importance.

Obs. The substitution of von, with the dative, for the genitive takes place, besides, in the following instances:—

1. In names of countries or places (especially when they cannot be declined), as das Alter von Syrakus, the antiquity of Syracuse; die Königinn von England, the queen of England.

2. In numeral words used without article, and having no clear genitive termination, as der Besitzer von zehn Häusern, the proprietor of ten houses.

3. In substantives of the plural number, used without adjective or article, as ein Freund von Kindern, a friend of children.

4. To avoid the accumulation of too many genitive forms, as "the tutor of the children of the nobleman" would be, in German, der Erzieher von den Kindern des Edelmanns.

5. To avoid an equivocal meaning; for instance, a work of Göthe's may mean a book composed by Göthe, or belonging to Göthe: in the first case it would be, in German, ein Werk von Göthe; in the second, ein Werk Göthe's. Thus, also, ein Bild vom Maler Raphael, a picture drawn by the painter Raphaello; but, ein Bild des Malers Raphael, a likeness of the painter.

6. In pronouns personal, as—he is a friend of mine, of ours, er ist ein Freund von mir, von uns.

7. After numerals, the superlative and comparative degrees, and after pronouns, the genitive partitive is expressed either by von, aus, or unter with dative; for instance, einer, zwei, drei, u.s.w. von uns, one, two, three, &c. of us; einige aus unserem Kreise, some of our circle; er ist der größere

von den beiden, he is the taller one of the two; sie ist die beste unter ihnen, she is the best of them; derjenige von uns, he of us; wer von uns, who amongst us; jeder von ihnen, every one of them.

5. The genitive stands after the following prepositions:

anstatt or statt, instead	kraft, by authority
halb, halben, or halber, for the sake	mittelst (mittels), or vermittelst, by means
außerhalb, outside	um—willen, for the sake
innerhalb, inside	ungeachtet, notwithstanding
oberhalb, above	unweit, or unfern, not far
unterhalb, below	vermöge, by dint of
diesseit, on this side	während, during
jenseit, on that side	wegen, on account.

Obs. Five prepositions are construed with genitive or dative, they are:

laut, according	trotz, in spite
längs or entlang, along	zufolge, in consequence.

6. The genitive is also often used in adverbial expressions. Thus,

a. The time answering to the question wann? when? often is conveyed by a genitive, as eines Tages, one day; jeder Zeit, at all times; dieser Tage, within these few days; and especially when a point of time is to be fixed, as eines Abends, once in the evening; or when a repetition of an action is connected with the expression of time, as Sonntags geht er in die Kirche, he is in the habit of going to church on Sundays; Abends vor dem Schlafen gehen überlegte sie, was sie den folgenden Tag vornehmen sollte, she (always) of an evening, before going to bed, considered what she was to do next day.

Obs. If, however, an action or occurrence during a cer-

tain time is represented as lasting the whole of the time, the answer must be given by an accusative; for instance, ich habe diese Woche wenig gethan, I have done little during (the whole of) this week; ich habe ihn vorigen Sommer nicht gesehen, I did not see him during (the whole of) last summer; er erhält hundert Pfund das Jahr, he receives (as salary) one hundred pounds (for) the (whole) year. And the answer must be given with in and the dative, when an action is understood to last only part of the time, as ich werde in dem Sommer eine Reise machen, I'll make a journey in (a part of the) summer; im Frühling ist es hier sehr schön, in (parts of) spring it is here very fine.

b. The place answering the question wo? where? as aller Orten, in all places; höhern Ortes, in a higher place (by the authorities); linker Hand or links, on the left side.

Obs. The answer to the question wohin? where to? is expressed with a genitive, when the commencement of a direction is to be pointed out, as gehe deines Weges! *i. e.* gehe fort! go your way, go along! But when the continuation of the way is to be implied, the accusative is used, as gehe deinen Weg, und laß mich den meinigen gehen, go your way, and let me go mine.

§ 5. ON THE USE OF THE DATIVE.

1. The dative stands for the person who is interested in an action, as mir blüht kein Frühling, no spring blooms for me; was ist dir? what is the matter with you?

Obs. This dative (called *dativus commodi* in Latin grammar), is either untranslateable in English, as ich habe mir die Sache angesehen, I have looked at the matter; daß heiße ich mir ein Lied, that I call a song; thue mir das nicht wieder, I pray, do not do this again: or it is expressed by a pos-

sessive pronoun, or the genitive case; for instance, schweigt dir die Stimme des Prophetengeistes? is the voice of *your* prophetic spirit silent? er schoß ihm eine Kugel durch die Brust, he sent a bullet through *his* heart; ich habe mir die Glieder verrenkt, I have dislocated *my* joints; er sah dem Spieler in die Karten, he looked at the cards *of the gambler;* ich fühlte mich wie einer, dem eine Last von der Schulter genommen worden, I felt myself like one from *whose* shoulder a load had been taken.

2. The dative stands for the interested person after the following neuter verbs:

ahnen, to give a foreboding, as das ahnete mir lang, I had long ago a foreboding of this.

ähneln, to resemble, as er ahnelt seinem Vater, he resembles his father.

antworten, to answer, as er antwortete mir nichts, he gave me no answer.

befehlen, to command, as er befahl mir fortzugehen, he ordered me to go away.

begegnen, to meet, as sie begegneten mir eben, they were just meeting me.

danken, to thank, as ich danke Ihnen, I thank you.

dienen, to serve, as er diente mir treulichst, he served me most faithfully.

drohen, to threaten, as er drohte den Feinden, he threatened his enemies.

fluchen, to curse, as segne die, welche dir fluchen, bless those who curse thee.

folgen, to follow, as folge meinem Rathe, follow my advice.

fröhnen, to be a slave to, as seinen Leidenschaften, to one's passions.

frommen, to avail, as was kann es dir frommen, what can it avail you?

gleichen, to be like, as seinen Eltern, one's parents.
glücken, to turn out well, as es glückte mir, I succeeded.
helfen, to assist, as seinem Nebenmenschen, one's fellow-man.
nahen, to approach, as sie naheten unserer Linie furchtlos, fearlessly they approached our line.
nützen, to avail, as es nützt mir nicht, it is of no avail to me.
passen, to fit, as das Kleid paßt mir, the dress fits me.
schaden, to hurt, as er schadete seinem eigenen Plane, he damaged his own plan.
schmeicheln, to flatter, as seinen Launen, one's humours.
steuern, to check, as einem Uebel, an evil.
trauen or vertrauen, to trust, as seinem Freunde, one's friend.
träumen, to dream, as die Geschichte hat mir geträumt, I have dreamed this story.
trotzen, to defy, as dem Gesetze, the law.
wehren, to restrain, einem wilden Knaben, a wild boy.
winken, to beckon, as seinem Diener, one's servant.
ziemen or geziemen, to behove, as es ziemt dir, it behoves you.
zürnen, to be angry, as ich konnte ihm nicht lange zürnen, I could not long be angry with him.

3. The dative of the interested person stands after verbs neuter derived by ge, ent, er, and miß, or compounded with ab, an, auf, aus, bei, ein, entgegen, nach, unter, vor, wider, and zu, as gehorchen, to obey; gelingen, to succeed; genügen, to satisfy; entfahren, to escape; mißfallen, to displease; abhelfen, to remedy; abrathen, to dissuade; auffallen, to strike (as astonishing); auflauern, to way-lay; beistehen, to assist; entgegen kommen, to come to meet; nachahmen, to imitate;

nachsehen, to connive; vorbeugen, to obviate; widersprechen, to contradict; zuvorkommen, to anticipate.

Obs. 1. Many of these verbs, particularly when they imply an alienation, are construed, in English, with the preposition before the interested person; for instance, er entriß mir das Buch, he snatched the book *from* me; der Krieg raubte uns unsere Habe, war took our property *from* us; er entlief mir, he ran away *from* me.

Obs. 2. All verbs construed with a dative of the interested person, keep this dative unaltered when changed into passives; for instance, es wird mir gehorcht or mir wird gehorcht, I am obeyed; mir wurde von ihnen aufgelauert, I was way-laid by them; dir wurde nicht umsonst von dem Feinde getrotzt, you were not in vain defied by the enemy.

4. A dative stands after the following prepositions:

aus, out of	nach, after
außer, except	nächst or zunächst, next to
bei, near	nebst and sammt, together with
binnen, within	ob, above
entgegen, opposed to	seit, since
gegenüber, opposite	von, from
gemäß, according	zu, to
mit, with	zuwider, against.

Obs. Four prepositions—längs, entlang, along; trotz, in spite; zufolge, according, can also be construed with a genitive: and entlang, besides, with an accusative, when following the noun.

§ 6. ON THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

1. All verbs active are construed with an accusative of the object.

Obs. Rufen, to call, is construed with the dative, when meaning—to give an order by calling; as die Trompete ruft dem Krieger, the trumpet gives the warrior a sign to advance; wer ruft mir? who bids me come?

2. Many verbs impersonal are construed with an accusative referring to a person, as es hungert mich, I am hungry; es durstet dich, thou art thirsty; es friert ihn, he is cold; es schläfert uns, we feel sleepy; es gelüstet mich, I have a longing; es verlangt euch, you have a wish.

Obs. Remark, this es can be omitted: the accusative then begins the sentence, as mich hungert, dich durstet, &c.

3. Some verbs impersonal are construed with an accusative referring to a thing, as es schneit große Flocken, it snows great flakes; es regnet Feuer, Schwefel, Frösche, it rains fire, sulphur, frogs; es hagelt Steine, it hails stones; es setzt Schläge, blows are falling; es giebt Leute, there are people.

Obs. Remark, this es can never be omitted, it being considered as an indefinite subject of the sentence.

4. Many verbs neuter are construed with an accusative as object, the idea of which is implied in the verb, as eine Sprache sprechen, to speak a language; einen Traum träumen, to dream a dream: but poets even add accusatives of objects, the notion of which is not connected with the verbs, as Mord blicken, to fix a murderous look; Zerstörung blicken, to look with the glance of a destroyer; Liebe lächeln, to smile a smile of love; Gesundheit athmen, to look (breathe) full of health.

Obs. 1. The verb sprechen, to speak, when construed with the accusative as object of person, means—to see a person so as to be able to speak to him, as ich sprach deinen Vater diesen Morgen, I saw and spoke to your father this morning; ist Ihr Herr zu Hause, und kann ich ihn sprechen? is your master at home, and can I see him? But when construed with mit and the dative, it means—to converse, to speak about

a matter, as wir sprachen mit ihm darüber mehr als zwei Stunden, we were talking to him about it for more than two hours.

Obs. 2. The neuter verb *to enter* can be construed, in English, with an accusative of the place, as I entered *the room* (following the analogy of the Latin, *intrare urbem*); but, in German, the preposition in before the accusative cannot be omitted, as ich trat in das Zimmer ein.

Obs. 3. The neuter verb werfen, to throw, is construed, in English, with an accusative of the thing, and a preposition with its case for the person; for instance, he threw *a stone at him.* In German, either the same construction is adopted, as er warf einen Stein nach ihm; or the person stands in the accusative, and the thing, as an instrument, is placed in the dative with the preposition mit, as er warf ihn mit einem Steine. Thus, also, spielen, to play, which is construed with an accusative of the instrument in English, has a preposition before it in German, as auf der Flöte spielen, to play the flute. But it is also said, Karten spielen, to play cards.

5. Fragen, to ask, is construed with two accusatives, one for the person, and the other for the thing concerned, as er fragte mich diese Frage, he asked me this question; and lehren, to teach, follows the same construction, when the second accusative is either a pronoun, an infinitive, or a substantive derived from an infinitive, as er lehrte es mich, he taught it me; er lehrte mich schwimmen or das Schwimmen, he taught me how to swim. But when the second accusative is represented by any other substantive, the object of the person must stand in the dative, as er hat mir diese Sprache gelehrt, he has taught me this language.

6. Many verbs which require in English or in Latin a double accusative, follow the same construction in German; such are, heißen, to call; nennen, to

name; schelten, to scold; schimpfen, to insult, &c.: for instance, er hieß ihn seinen Freund, he called him his friend; er nannte den Mann einen Wohlthäter, he called that man a benefactor.

Obs. 1. After many verbs with a double accusative, in Latin, when the second is represented as predicate to the first, this second is expressed, in German, with zu and the dative, as Holz zu Asche brennen, to burn wood to ashes; einen zum Führer wählen, to choose one as conductor; einen zum König ernennen, to elect one as king; die Weisheit zur Führerin nehmen, to take wisdom for one's guide; einen zum Freunde machen, to make one one's friend; einen zum Narren haben, to play the fool with one.

Obs. 2. The second accusative, in Latin, is often preceded in German either (*a*) by für, when this object is presumed to be only *imagined*, as ich halte ihn für meinen Freund, I think him to be my friend; er giebt sich für einen Verwandten aus, he pretends to be a relation: or (*b*) by als, when the object is considered as *real*, as ich betrachte ihn als meinen Freund, I consider (and treat him) as my friend; er stellt sich als Künstler dar, he is and behaves like an artist; ich kenne ihn als einen ehrlichen Mann, I know him to be an honest man.

7. Heißen, means—1. *to call*, and is construed according to 6. 2. *To bid;* in this sense (*a*) an accusative of the person follows, when connected with an infinitive, as ich hieß ihn kommen, I bade him to come; (*b*) when not connected with an infinitive, a dative or accusative can be added, as wer hieß es dir? who ordered you to do that? or, wer hieß dich das?

8. Lassen, to let, to order, is construed—

a. With an accusative of the person and an infinitive, when that person is to accomplish or to suffer what the infinitive implies, as er ließ ihn die Bücher

kaufen, he ordered him to buy the books; er ließ ihn bestrafen, he ordered him to be punished.

b. When the person is not affected by, but only interested in the action of the infinitive, then it stands in the dative, as er ließ ihm ein Haus bauen, he ordered a house to be built for him.

9. The accusative stands after verbs and adjectives expressing—

a. Weight, as der Brief ist zwei Unzen schwer, the letter weighs two ounces.

b. Measure, as das Band ist eine Elle lang, the ribbond is one yard long.

c. Duration, as er wartete hier mehr als zwei Stunden, he waited here more than two hours.

Obs. In this case, the preposition *for* is often used in English, but never in German; therefore, "he remains in town *for* three months," must be translated, er bleibt drei Monate in der Stadt.

d. Value, as es kostet hier den zehnten Theil mehr als in Paris, it costs here one tenth more than in Paris.

10. The accusative sometimes stands instead of a genitive after the adjectives ansichtig, gewahr, gewohnt, los, müde, satt, überdrüßig (cf. § 4. 2).

11. An accusative follows the prepositions—

bis, till	ohne, without
durch, through	sonder, without
für, for	um, around
gegen, against	wider, against.

Obs. 1. The following prepositions are sometimes construed with the dative, and sometimes with the accusative—

an, on	hinter, behind
auf, upon	in, in

neben, near
über, over
unter, under
vor, before
zwischen, between.

Obs. 2. The preposition entlang, along, can be construed either with genitive, dative, or accusative.

CHAP. III.—ON THE USE OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The following adjectives can only be used as predicates:

abhold, disaffected, as er ward mir abhold.
abspänstig or abspenstig, disinclined, as abspänstig machen, to detach.
abwendig, estranged, as abwendig machen, to alienate.
angst und bang, anxious, as mir wird angst und bang, I am getting very anxious.
anheischig, answerable, as ich mache mich anheischig, I bind myself.
ansichtig, having sight of something, as sie wurden deiner ansichtig, they became aware of your approach.
ausfindig, to be found out, as ausfindig machen, to find out.
eingedenk, mindful, as ich bin meiner Pflicht eingedenk, I think of my duty.
feind, hostile, as er ist mir feind.
getrost, confident, as sei getrost, be of good cheer.
gewahr, perceptible, as ich wurde seiner gewahr, I perceived him.
gram, averse, as du wirst mir gram.
habhaft, in possession, as einer Sache habhaft werden, to get possession of a thing.
handgemein, hand-to-hand, as handgemein werden, to fight hand-to-hand.
irre, puzzled, as ich werde irre.
kund, known, as es ward uns kund.
leid, sorry, as es thut or es ist mir leid, I am sorry.
noth, necessary, as es thut noth, it is necessary.
nütz, of use, as es ist zu nichts nütz.
quitt, quits, as wir sind quitt.

theilhaft, participant, as eines Gutes theilhaft werden, to get a share in an endowment.
unpaß, indisposed, as ich fühle mich unpaß, I feel unwell.
verlustig, deprived of, as einer Sache verlustig werden, to lose a thing.

2. Many adjectives can only be used as attributes: such are—

a. Derivatives from adverbs of time and place; as,
dortig, of that place, as die dortige Gegend, the neighbourhood there.
heutig, of to-day, as der heutige Tag, this day.
hiesig, of this place, as die hiesige Sitte, the custom here.
gestrig, of yesterday, as die gestrige Zeitung, yesterday's newspaper.
morgend, of to-morrow, as das morgende Fest, to-morrow's festival.

b. Some adjectives, which express more the manner of an action than the quality of a thing, as nächtlich, nightly; stündlich, hourly; jährlich, annual; anfänglich, beginning; eidlich, by oath; wörtlich and buchstäblich, literal.

Such adjectives can only serve as attributes of verbal substantives, and therefore, although they seem to be adjectives, they have, in reality, the signification of adverbs; for instance, ein täglicher Besuch, a daily visit (*i. e.* a visit daily repeated); seine eidliche Versicherung, his assurance strengthened by an oath; eine schriftliche Mittheilung, a communication made by means of a letter.

c. Some derivatives in en and ern from names of stuffs and materials, as der goldene Ring, the golden ring; die steinerne Bank, the stone bench; das wollene Kleid, the woollen garment.

3. The two adjectives viel, much, and wenig, little, and the substantive ein Paar, when used in the adjec-

tive sense of wenig, few, can serve in their radical form without termination for different genders and numbers, as viel Leute, many people; wenig Geld, little money; man machte wenig Umstände, they did not use many ceremonies; in ein Paar Jahren, in a few years; ich that es mit ein Paar Schritten ab, I finished it with a few steps; bei so viel Schönheit und Jugend, with so much beauty and youth. When, however, an adjective follows them, the termination of gender and number is often added, as viele schöne Häuser, many beautiful houses; in weniger Zeit, in a short time.

4. When the adjective represents a shortened attributive sentence, it is placed in its radical form after the substantive, as meine Mutter, stets heiter und froh, wollte auch andere so sehen, my mother, who was always cheerful and happy, wished also to see others in the same mood.

5. The comparative degree must be formed by mehr, more, when two adjectives are compared in reference to one object, as er war mehr lustig als traurig, mehr todt als lebendig, he was more cheerful than gloomy, more dead than alive.

6. In reference to the particles of similarity and intensity, used before the positive, comparative and superlative degrees, the following is to be remarked:

a. The English *so—as*, or *as—as*, in the positive, is in German so—wie; for instance, he is *so* (*as*) kind *as* his father, er ist so gütig wie sein Vater.

b. The English *than*, before the compared thing, is als in German, as—she is more industrious *than* her sister, sie ist fleißiger als ihre Schwester.

c. The particles *of* or *amongst*, before the compared thing in the superlative, is in German von, aus,

or unter, as—she is the best *of* all, sie ist die beste von or unter allen (or, in one word, die allerbeste); he is the bravest *amongst* the number, er ist aus der Zahl der bravste.

d. The intensive particle *still*, before the comparative, is noch, as—still better, noch besser; *so much the* is desto or um so, as *so much the* more to be remarked, desto (um so) mehr zu bemerken.

e. The particles of relation in comparisons are, in English, *the—the, by as much—by so much;* for instance, the sooner the better, the first of which is relative, the second demonstrative (cf. the Latin *quanto—tanto*), is expressed in German either by je—je, or je—desto, as je eher, je (desto) lieber; *the* older *the* wiser, je älter je (desto) weiser.

7. The form of the superlative degree, in the predicate, is either the adjective preceded by the definite article (like in the attribute), or the adverbial form with am (cf. Part I. Sect. iv. Ch. ii. p. 132); for instance, er ist der fleißigste, or er ist am fleißigsten, he is most industrious. The first form is used when one thing is compared with *others* in reference to *one* quality; for instance, er ist der fleißigste unter allen, he is the most industrious of all. The second form, when the degrees of a quality are compared concerning *one* and the *same* object, particularly in reference to circumstances of time, place, &c.; for instance, die See ist am schönsten beim Mondlicht, the ocean is most beautiful by moonlight.

CHAP. IV.—ON THE USE OF NUMERALS.

1. English expressions like—I have a new book, and he has an old *one;* this is a long table, and that

a round *one*, in which *one* represents the preceding substantive *book*, *table*, are rendered in German with the omission of *one*, as ich habe ein neues Buch, und er hat ein altes; dieses ist ein langer Tisch, und jenes ein runder.

2. In the phrase unser eins, the neuter is used for the masculine einer; but the phrase does not so much express number, *one of us*, as the notion of similitude of a quality, *one like us*, *one of our sphere*, *station*.

3. The numeral adjective *both*, which precedes the pronoun possessive in English, is placed after it in German, as—both my sisters, meine beiden Schwestern.

4. In order to express an uncertain amount the following adverbs are used: etwa, perhaps; ungefähr, about; beinahe, nearly; fast, almost; kaum, hardly; gegen, bei, an, towards.

Obs. Certain familiar phrases, used in conversational language, must not be imitated. Such are—einige dreißig Jahr alt, some thirty years old (instead of dreißig und einige Jahr alt); ein Stücker zwölf, about twelve pieces (instead of ein Stück oder zwölf); thus, also, ein Tager acht, about eight days; ein Jahrer drei, about three years; ich walkte so ein sechs Kerls durch, I cudgelled about six fellows nicely (instead of gegen sechs Kerle); all mein Lebtage denk' ich dran, I'll think of it all the days of my life (instead of alle Tage meines Lebens, or alle meine Lebenstage).

CHAP. V.—ON THE USE OF PRONOUNS.

§ 1. ON THE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. When male and female persons are pointed out by diminutive substantives (which are always neuter), the natural gender is taken up by the following personal pronouns, as das Mädchen fiel nieder; man hob sie

auf, und brachte sie nach Hause, the girl fell down; they lifted her up, and took her home.

2. In confidential language and in poetry persons are addressed, in German, with du, thou, in the singular; and Ihr, you, in plural. Thus parents and children, relations and intimate friends, call each other; and the Divine Being, and other spiritual agents, are appealed to by du and Ihr. But also inferiors, and, out of contempt, malicious superiors are sometimes addressed in this manner.

Obs. Servants were formerly addressed by their masters, and inferiors by their superiors, with the third person singular; for instance, gehe sie sogleich, und laß sie sich nie wieder hier sehen! go (woman) immediately, and never let yourself again be seen here! trage er schnell den Brief auf die Post! take the letter quickly to the post!

3. In social language, however, persons, even when single individuals, are addressed with the third person plural; for instance, ich bitte Sie, mein Herr, I ask you, Sir.

Obs. 1. This usage, now general all over Germany, is only about one hundred and thirty years old.

Obs. 2. When a person is called in this social form, the following pronouns and verbs must, of course, agree with the third person of the plural; for instance, Sie haben das Ihrige gethan, you have done your duty.

4. *On the use of* es, *it.*

The neuter of the personal pronoun es, it, is used—

a. Before impersonal verbs, as es blitzt, it lightens; es giebt, there is.

Obs. This es can never be omitted, as regnet es? does it rain? jetzt regnet es, now it is raining; ich glaube, daß es regnet, I think it is raining.

b. Es, together with the demonstratives das and dies, is often used as an indefinite subject, in reference to persons and things of all genders and numbers which stand as predicates; for instance, es ist mein Vater, it is my father; es sind Bekannte, they are acquaintances; das or dies ist mein Bruder, meine Tante, that is my brother, my aunt; das waren glückliche Tage! those were happy days!

Obs. 1. These subjects, es, das, dies, are also retained in all constructions; for instance, ist es mein Vater? is it my father? dennoch ist es mein Vater, it is my father still; zweifelst du noch, daß es mein Vater ist? do you still doubt it is my father?

Obs. 2. When the predicate is a personal pronoun, this must be placed first, and es follow the verb; for instance, er ist es, it is *he;* ich bin es, it is myself; er heißt mein Freund, aber er ist es nicht, he is called my friend, but he is not so: but das and dies precede also in this case, as das waret Ihr, it was you; das ist sie, it is she.

c. Es, when used before impersonal expressions governing a case, as—it behoves me, es ziemt mir, or with a passive voice—it was told by him, es wurde von ihm gesagt, can always be omitted, as mir ziemt, von ihm wurde gesagt.

d. Es is also used in the beginning of a sentence as a sort of prelude, to show that the subject, with a stress on it, is following the verb; for instance, es erwiederte dann mein Freund, my friend then replied.

Obs. This es only locally represents the subject: when, therefore, the construction forces the latter to take its proper place, es must be omitted; for instance, ich weiß, daß mein Freund dann erwiederte, I know that my friend then replied; was erwiederte dann mein Freund? what did my friend

then reply? jetzt erwiederte mein Freund, now my friend replied.

e. Es is sometimes used instead of the genitive, or a preposition with its case, as ich bin es zufrieden, I am satisfied with it; ich bin es überdrüßig, I am tired of it (cf. Chap. II. §. 4. 2).

f. Es is often used as a prelude to a coming object, when that is expressed by an objective sentence; for instance, ich weiß es, daß du mir folgen wirst, I know that you will follow me.

5. On the cases of the personal pronoun.

a. The genitive and dative of es, when referring to a definite object, are not in use: they are supplied by the cases of the demonstrative pronouns der or derselbe; for instance, ich habe Papier genug, aber ich kann mich dessen or desselben nicht bedienen, I have paper enough, but I cannot make any use of it; es ist ein großes Uebel, doch vermögen wir nicht dem zu steuern, it is a great evil; however, we cannot check it.

b. The accusative of es, when preceded by a preposition, is either replaced by the demonstrative dasselbe, or changed into da, preceding the preposition, as durch dasselbe, or dadurch, through it.

c. Thus, also, the datives ihm, ihr, ihm, when combined with prepositions, and referring, not to persons but to things, are changed into da, with the preposition following; for instance, das Buch ist langweilig, ich kann nicht mehr darin (instead of in ihm) lesen, the book is tedious, I can no longer read it; er kletterte auf das Dach, und blieb eine halbe Stunde darauf (instead of auf ihm) sitzen, he climbed upon the roof, and remained there half an hour; das Messer ist scharf, du wirst dich damit (instead of mit ihm) schneiden, the knife is sharp, you will cut yourself with it.

d. When the genitive plural of a personal pronoun is construed with a numeral, the latter, contrary to the English, stands last, as es waren unser sechs, there were *six of us*.

Obs. Mark the distinction between es waren unser fünf da, and fünf von uns waren da; the first implies that there were altogether five, but the second, that there were only five out of a larger number: thus, also, wir waren unser neun in dem Schauspiele, we nine were in the playhouse; wir waren neunzehn im Zimmer, und sieben von uns gingen in das Schauspiel, we were nineteen in the room, and seven of us went to the playhouse.

6. The English idiomatic phrases "a friend of *mine*," "a brother of *his*," "acquaintances of *ours*," are so rendered, that the personal pronoun required by the grammatical construction is substituted for the possessive; therefore, ein Freund von mir, ein Bruder von ihm, Bekannte von uns.

7. If a personal pronoun is immediately followed by a relative sentence, for instance, "*you, who* are my friend," the personal pronoun (you) must be repeated after the relative pronoun (who), if the verb (are) is to agree in person with the first (you); therefore, du, der du mein Freund bist or Sie, der Sie mein Freund sind: likewise, wir, die wir immer euch unterstützten, we who always assisted you; Ihr, die Ihr uns belehren solltet, you, who ought to teach us.

§ 2. ON THE USE OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The German possessive pronoun agrees with the English in so far as it has, in the third person singular, different forms, according to the gender of the possessor; for instance, *his* father, sein Vater; *her* father, ihr Vater; *its* father, sein Vater; but it

differs from the English, and agrees with the French, in having terminations of gender and number for all persons, according to the objects possessed, as *son* père, sein Vater; *sa* mère, seine Mutter; *ses* parens, seine Eltern, whilst in English the one form—*his*, serves for all three instances, the masculine and the feminine, singular and plural.

2. The possessive pronoun is often replaced by the genitive of the demonstrative pronoun der or derselbe, in order to avoid an equivocal meaning; for instance, in the sentence "the merchant travelled with his friend to town, in order to arrange his affairs," it is uncertain whose affairs are to be arranged; if the merchant's, the German would be, der Kaufmann reiste mit seinem Freunde nach der Stadt, um seine Geschäfte in Ordnung zu bringen; but if the friend's, instead of seine would be used dessen or desselben. Thus, also, die Mutter sprach mit der Tochter, um ihre Trauer zu mildern, the mother spoke to her daughter in order to soothe her own grief; but, um deren Trauer zu mildern, in order to soothe the grief of the latter.

Obs. This is often done, even if there is no difficulty in understanding, when the pronoun refers to an inanimate thing; for instance, man hat mir das Buch gerühmt, aber ich finde dessen Inhalt nicht befriedigend, they have recommended me this book, but I do not find *its* contents quite satisfactory.

3. The expressions meinesgleichen, euresgleichen, &c., people of my principles, of your stamp, &c., are genitives of mein Gleiches, euer Gleiches, my like, your like, &c.; they are used elliptically, since the word Leute, people, must be understood.

§ 3. ON THE USE OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Dieser and jener are only used in the genitive when attributes to a substantive; for instance, der Vater dieses Knaben, the father of this boy; der Erzieher jener Kinder, the tutor of those children. If they are not attributive, they are replaced by the genitive of der, die, das, as dessen Vater, his father *or* the father of him; deren Geschichte, her story; er hat dessen genug, he has enough of it; deren Unglück, their misfortune.

2. Dieser and jener are generally used to point out a contrast between two persons or things. Thus (*a*) dieser means *the latter*, whilst jener refers to something first mentioned; for instance, Friedrich und Karl wohnten lange zusammen; jener war schweigsam, aber dieser redete gern, Frederick and Charles lodged for a long time together; the first was of a taciturn mood, but the latter liked to talk.

Obs. It is on that account that dieser often absolutely corresponds to the English *the latter;* for instance, er liebte seinen Sohn sehr, aber dieser erwiederte seine Liebe mit Undank, he loved his son much, but *the latter* returned his love with ingratitude. In the same manner jener corresponds to the English *the first mentioned*, without a dieser having preceded; for instance,

——— Herkömmlich ist's,
Daß vor Gericht kein Britte gegen den Schotten,
Kein Schotte gegen jenen zeugen darf.

(It is a custom, that, in a court-of-law, no Englishman is allowed to witness against a Scotchman, and no Scotchman against *the first-mentioned.*)

(*b*) Dieser and jener often express an uncertain

multitude, a various mass, as ich kümmere mich nicht, was dieser und jener sagen, I do not care what *people* say; bald quält mich dieser, bald jener, at one time I am bothered by *these people*, at another by *others*; sie sprachen über dieses und jenes, they talked on various topics.

3. If the demonstrative pronoun does not express the idea of contrast, the form der, die, das is used; for instance, dessen werde ich nie vergessen, *that* I shall never forget; das geht über alle Erwartung, that goes beyond (surpasses) all expectation.

4. The pronoun der, die, das is also used to avoid the repetition of a substantive before mentioned, as ich sah die Bildergallerie von Dresden und auch die von Paris, I saw the picture-gallery of Dresden and also *that* of Paris; er schickte mir den Band von Ruckert aber nicht den von Uhland, he sent me the volume of Rückert, but not *that* of Uhland.

5. The pronoun demonstrative is often used instead of the personal and possessive—

a. In order to avoid an equivocal meaning (cf. § 2. 2).

b. When referring to an inanimate thing (cf. § 1. 5, *a. b*).

6. Dessen, deren, dessen, and the plural deren are sometimes used to express the French *en*, the English *some;* for instance, hast du Zucker? hast thou sugar? ich habe dessen noch, I have *some* still. Haben Sie schöne Bilder in Ihrem Zimmer? have you beautiful pictures in your room? freilich habe ich deren, certainly I have some.

7. Das is occasionally used for a number of persons, to express either familiarity or contempt; for instance; das denkt wie ein Seifensieder, those people

think like soap-boilers; das thut nichts als essen und trinken, those wretches do nothing but eat and drink; das schlendert wie die Schnecken, those fellows crawl along like snails.

Das toset und koset so lange,
Verschwindet zuletzt mit Gesange.

"Those (merry guests) revel and prattle for a long time, and at last disappear with a song."

§ 4. ON THE USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The signification of the two pronouns relative welcher, welche, welches, and der, die, das, is perfectly the same; however, they are not altogether indiscriminately used.

a. If the pronoun relative neuter refers to a whole sentence, its form is welches or was; for instance, ich sprach, aber er antwortete nicht, welches (or was) mir gar nicht gefiel, I spoke, but he did not answer, which did not please me at all; sie lernte fast alle Sprachen ohne Lehrer, was gar nicht leicht ist, she learned almost all languages without masters, which is not an easy matter.

b. When a relative sentence follows the first or second person of the personal pronoun, it must be headed by der, die, das; for instance, wir, die wir es immer gesagt haben, we who have always said so; du, der du es nie leugnetest, you who never did deny it.

Obs. If, however, other words intervene, the relative sentence must begin with welcher, welche, welches, as ich bin es, welcher das gethan hat, it is I who have done it; du bist der Mann, welcher es sagte, you are the man who said it.

c. When several relative sentences refer to one noun, the first generally begins with welcher, welche,

welches, and the next with der, die, das, as ein Mann, welcher unablässig arbeitete, und der selbst die unschuldigsten Vergnügungen sich versagte, a man who was incessantly at his work, and who denied himself even the most innocent amusements.

2. Wer and was are used when the relative pronoun refers to persons and things in general; for instance, er versammelte alle die Seinigen, und wer sonst noch zugegen war, he assembled his family and all besides who were present; nicht Furcht, sondern Ungewißheit war es, was mir die Brust beengte, it was not fear, but uncertainty, that troubled my heart.

Obs. 1. If the relative sentence, headed by wer and was, precedes its corresponding demonstrative sentence, the pronoun in the latter can be omitted, when agreeing in case with the relative pronoun; for instance, wer nicht arbeiten will, (der) muß hungern, he who will not work must starve; was ich versprochen, (das) halte ich, what I promised, that I'll keep. But it cannot be omitted when the two pronouns stand in different cases, as wer nicht gehorchen will, den muß man bestrafen, we must punish him who will not listen; was ich gehört habe, dessen werde ich immer eingedenk sein, what I have heard, of that I shall always be mindful.

Obs. 2. Was is often used adverbially for so schnell als, so viel als; for instance, er eilte, was er konnte, he hastened as much as he could.

3. The relative pronoun can never be omitted, like in English; and "the man I saw" must be translated, der Mann, welchen ich sah.

SECTION III.—ON THE USE OF VERBS IN SENTENCES.

CHAP. I.—ON NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

1. The verb agrees with its subject in reference to number; and the frequent use, in English, of the plural with the singular of collective substantives, is not admissible in German, as "the multitude *were* dispersed," "a great number of people *were* killed," "my family *are* now in town." These must be translated—die Menge wurde zerstreut; eine große Zahl Menschen wurde getödtet; meine Familie ist jetzt in der Stadt.

2. The verb agrees with its subject also in reference to person; only in relative sentences, representing adjectives to the personal pronoun, the verb stands in the third person, even when referring to the first or second person of the pronoun; for instance, ich, der solches nie geglaubt hat, I, who have never believed such a thing; du, der doch zugegen war, thou, who wert present; Ihr, die es vor dem Gerichte bestätigten, you, who affirmed it before a court of law.

If, in this case, the verb is to agree in person, the pronoun personal must be repeated after the relative pronoun, as ich, der ich solches nie geglaubt habe; du, der du doch zugegen warst; Ihr, die Ihr es vor dem Gerichte bestätigtet.

3. Du and Ihr are added to the forms of the imperative to point out a contrast, as ich that das Meinige, nun thue du das Deinige (or, Ihr das Eurige), I did my duty, now you do yours.

4. Es, before objective impersonal verbs, can be omitted, as es friert mich or mich friert, I am cold;

es beliebt mir or mir beliebt, it pleases me: but it cannot be left out before impersonal verbs without objects, as es schneit, it snows; es donnert, it thunders.

CHAP. II.—ON TENSES.

§ 1. ON THE PRESENT.

The present is used exactly like in English, only with two exceptions:

1. The present often stands, in German, for the imperfect in a lively account; for instance, wie ich vorige Woche so aus dem Hause trete, kommt ein wildes Pferd daher gerannt, wirft und stürzt alles vor sich nieder, bis es mein jüngster Sohn muthig beim Zügel erfaßt, as I last week was leaving my house, there came a wild horse rushing along, throwing and dashing every thing down, until my youngest son seized it by the bridle.

2. It is often used for the future, but then an adverbial expression must indicate the future time, as morgen schreibe ich an meinen Freund, to-morrow I'll write to my friend; ich reise, wenn es morgen nicht regnet, I'll depart, if it does not rain to-morrow.

§ 2. ON THE IMPERFECT.

The imperfect is used—1. to point out a lasting action in the past time; for instance, Rom sank mehr und mehr, während die barbarischen Völker von allen Seiten die Grenzen überschritten, Rome *was sinking* more and more, whilst the barbarous nations from all sides *were overpassing* the boundaries.

2. Like in English, it serves to express the past time in an historical account; for instance, es war im

Jahre 1268, da Conradin zu Neapel enthauptet wurde, it was in 1268 that Conradino was beheaded at Naples.

§ 3. ON THE PERFECT.

The perfect is used to indicate:

1. An accomplished action in the present time, as er ist endlich angekommen, he is at last arrived; die Sonne ist untergegangen, the sun has gone down; du hast mich überzeugt, you have convinced me.

2. The everlasting durance of a time, as Gott hat die Welt erschaffen, God has created the world.

3. The past time in an historical account, particularly when the speaking person was not present in the place of the occurrence; for instance, gestern ist der Knabe gestorben, the boy died yesterday (understood, that the speaker has heard it as a report); but, gestern starb der Knabe, implies that the speaker was present.

4. The accomplished fact in the future, instead of the future perfect; for instance, sobald ich den Brief geschrieben habe, werde ich zu dir kommen, as soon as I shall have written the letter, I'll come to you.

§ 4. ON THE PLUPERFECT.

The pluperfect is used, like in English, to point out an accomplished fact in the past time; for instance, nachdem ich dieses Wort ausgesprochen hatte, ergriff er die Vase, und warf sie auf den Boden, after I had pronounced this word, he seized the vase and dashed it to the ground.

§ 5. ON THE FUTURE TENSES.

The future is often used instead of the present, and the future perfect instead of a past tense, when the action of the verb is represented as probable or possible;

for instance, du wirst dich irren, urtheile daher nicht zu schnell, it is possible that you are mistaken, therefore do not judge too hastily; er wird im Garten gewesen sein, während du ihn im Hause suchtest, probably he has been in the garden, whilst you were looking for him in the house.

Obs. In translating into German English sentences containing verbs of the present or past tense, with the addition of an adverbial expression of probability or possibility, this adverbial expression can, therefore, be omitted, and the present tense changed into the future, but the past into the future perfect; for instance, I suppose you are reading the new work, Sie werden das neue Buch lesen; you were, perhaps, acquainted with him, Sie werden mit ihm bekannt gewesen sein; no doubt he has heard of the loss of the ship, er wird von dem Verluste des Schiffes gehört haben.

CHAP. III.—ON THE USE OF THE MODES.

§ 1. ON THE USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

The indicative is used in every sentence, the substance of which is represented as actual and real; for instance, ich weiß, daß er dieses thun wird, I know (for certain) that he will do this; ich glaube, daß ein Gott die Welt regiert, I am persuaded that a God governs the universe; ich zweifle, daß mein Freund so gehandelt hat, I doubt (*i. e.* I do not at all believe) that my friend has thus acted; ich fürchte, daß du nicht Wort halten wirst, I fear you will not keep your word.

Verordnet ist im Englischen Gesetz,
Daß jeder Angeklagte durch Geschworne
Von seines Gleichen soll gerichtet werden.

(It is ordained in the laws of England, that every defendant shall be judged by jurors of his rank and station.)

§ 2. ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN GENERAL.

1. The subjunctive is used in main sentences, the substance of which is represented as imaginary or possible: therefore in sentences implying a wish, a hope, a probable opinion; for instance, käme er doch bald! oh that he would come soon! vielleicht könntest du es thun, you may, perhaps, be able to do it; ich dürfte ihn wohl dort sehen, I might, likely, see him there; lange lebe der König! long may the king live! der Mensch versuche die Götter nicht! let man never tempt the gods! komme er denn! let him then come! sei es so! be it so!

2. The subjunctive is used in subjective and objective sentences, the substance of which is represented as lying only within the range of the mind, and independent of any outward reality. This is the case—

a. After verbs expressing *to think, to feel, to wish, to judge, to opine, to believe, to suspect, to doubt, to seem, to hope, to fear, to beg, to command, to admonish, to advise, to say, to relate, to inform;* for instance, von Maximilian ist prophezeit worden, er werde der letzte König aus einem Deutschen Hause sein. It was foretold of Maximilian, that he would be the last king of a German family.—Man wünscht hier, daß Schweden eine Aristokratie werde. You wish here that Sweden may become an aristocratic empire.—Sie meint, der Prinz habe das nicht auszuführen gehofft. She is of opinion that the prince had not hoped to carry this out.—Nicolaus Heinsius rühmt es einmal als sein erstes Glück, daß er zur Zeit der Königin Christine

geboren, als das zweite, daß er ihr bekannt geworden sei, als das dritte und vornehmste wünscht er sich, daß die Nachwelt erfahre, er habe ihr nicht ganz mißfallen. Nicholaus Heinsius boasts of his first good fortune, that he had been born in the times of Queen Christina; as his second, that he had been known by her; and he wishes, for the third and greatest, that posterity might learn he had not quite displeased her.—Der Fürst will nicht dulden, daß einer seiner Unterthanen einen auswärtigen Orden trage, wie er sagt, daß ein Mitglied seiner Heerde von einer fremden Hand sich bezeichnen lasse. The prince will not suffer that one of his subjects should wear the badge of a foreign order; as he expresses it, that a member of his flock should be marked by a foreign hand.—Mein Vater versicherte, es sei ihm gar nicht bange. My father assured me he was not at all anxious.—Er hatte die Vorstellung, daß es mit den Gemälden wie mit den Rheinweinen beschaffen sei; das Alter lege jenen einen vorzüglichen Werth bei, und nach Verlauf einiger Zeit werde der neue Wein auch ein alter. He had the notion, that it was with pictures as with Rhenish wines; that old age conferred a particular value on the first, and that, after the lapse of some time, the new wine would certainly also become an old one.

b. After impersonal phrases expressing necessity or a law, as

es ist recht, daß dem Fleiße sein Lohn werde, it is right that industry should receive its reward.

es ist rathsam, daß man in der Jugend sich anstrenge, it is advisable that we should exert ourselves whilst young.

es ist unnütz, daß man die Zeit mit Spielen tödte, it is of no use to kill time by playing.

es ist Zeit, daß du zeigest, was du leisten kannst, it is time to show what you can perform.

es liegt mir daran, daß du die Wahrheit höreſt, it is to me a matter of importance that you should hear the truth.

Obs. 1. From the above it can be seen, that the use of an indicative or subjunctive, in the same sentence, entirely depends upon the view taken of the substance of such a sentence, in reference to its reality; for instance, in the two sentences—ich habe gehört, daß er tausend Thaler gewonnen hat, I have heard that he has won a thousand thalers,—the second implies that the thing is certain, and that I have heard of it as such; but, daß er tausend Thaler gewonnen habe, would mean, that I only heard of it as a rumour, of which I was not at all convinced.

Obs. 2. The same is the case with conditional sentences: they have the verb in the indicative, when the condition is represented as a fact, and in the subjunctive, when as a possibility; for instance, wenn du fleißig bist, kannst du schnell zum Ziele kommen, if you are industrious, you can speedily arrive at your aim; wenn du fleißig wäreſt, könnteſt du schnell zum Ziele kommen, if you were industrious, you could speedily arrive at your aim.

Obs. 3. The subjunctive is preferred to the indicative in objective sentences after the historical (past) tense; for instance, man hoffte, daß er der Gefahr entronnen sei, it was hoped that he had escaped the danger.

Obs. 4. If a part of a sentence, with a subjunctive, is explained by a subordinate sentence, the latter contains (*a*) the indicative, when relating a fact; for instance, er sagte mir, daß die Bücher, welche er gestern gekauft hat, alle verbrannt seien, he told me that the books which (as I know) he had bought yesterday, were all consumed by fire. But (*b*) it contains the subjunctive, when representing something merely imagined, said, or thought; for instance, if in the

above sentence habe were substituted for hat, it would imply that he only said he had bought the books, but that I knew nothing of it as a fact.

§ 3. ON THE USE OF THE DIFFERENT SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES.

1. The subjunctive of the present can stand after all tenses; for instance, ich wünsche daß es nicht wahr sei. I wish it were not true.—Es war bei Blücher nach und nach zur Ueberzeugung geworden, daß es keine militärische Verlegenheit gebe, aus welcher man sich nicht am Ende durch einen Kampf Mann gegen Mann herausziehen könne. It had gradually become a conviction with Blücher, that there was no military embarrassment which one could not at length overcome by a close fight of man to man.

2. The subjunctive of the imperfect stands—

a. In adverbial sentences, when joined to a chief sentence in a conditional tense; for instance, wenn das Wetter trocken wäre, würden wir eine bessere Ernte haben, if the weather were dry, we should have a better harvest; er glaubt, daß er sich besser befinden würde, wenn er auf dem Lande wäre, he thinks he should be better, if he were in the country; du wirst gestehen, daß du mehr wissen würdest, wenn du fleißiger wärest, you will confess that you would know more, if you were more industrious.

b. The subjunctive of the imperfect and pluperfect can stand instead of the conditional tenses, even in main sentences; for instance, ich thäte es, I should do it; ich wäre nicht so still gewesen, I should not have been so quiet; ich wäre zufrieden, wenn er alles gestünde, I should be satisfied, if he were to confess all; ich wäre ruhig gewesen, wenn er nicht meinen

Namen erwähnt hätte, I should have been quiet, if he had not mentioned my name.

c. The subjunctive of the imperfect stands for the English *would*, in sentences expressing a wish; and for the English *could*, *might*, to express the potential mode, as o daß er käme! I would that he came! wenn er nur schriebe! if he *would* only write! er thäte es wahrlich, he certainly would do it; mit diesem Schwerte hülfe ich mir schon, with this sword I could help myself; er wartete, bis sein Bruder ihm Nachricht brächte, he waited until his brother *could* bring him information.

d. The subjunctive of the imperfect often stands for that of the present, to avoid a misunderstanding, in case the indicative and subjunctive of the present have the same form; for instance, er gesteht, daß ich kein Unrecht gethan habe; ich hätte mich aber nicht klug benommen, he agrees that I had done no wrong; but that I had not acted with prudence. If habe were substituted for hätte, the last sentence would be independent instead of—what it is—a subordinate.

3. The subjunctive of the future can stand after all tenses; for instance, wir hoffen, daß er bald ankommen werde, we hope that he will soon arrive; du fürchtetest, daß er nicht Wort halten werde, you were afraid he would not keep his word.

Obs. It is not rare to find the form of the conditional, instead of the subjunctive of the future, but it must not be imitated; for instance, er versicherte mir, er würde (instead of werde) es thun, he assured me he would do it.

§ 4. ON THE IMPERATIVE.

1. The pronoun must be added to the imperative—

a. If the third person plural is used for the ad-

dressed person; for instance, sprechen Sie, speak (to distinguish it from the infinitive sprechen, to speak).

b. When one person is to be contrasted with another, as du rede, und Ihr schweigt, thou speak, and you keep silent.

2. The third person singular is borrowed from the subjunctive present, as es geschehe dein Wille, let thy will be done; er reise denn, let him then travel; man erlaube mir eine Bemerkung, permit me to make one remark.

3. The first person plural is either taken from the present subjunctive, as gehen wir nun, now let us go; or circumscribed, like in English, by lassen, to let, as lasset uns nun weiter lesen, let us now read on.

Obs. 1. The adverb doch, (*dum* in Latin, *donc* in French,) is added to the imperative, to make the request more urgent, as eilen Sie doch, make haste, I pray.

Obs. 2. In familiar language, the imperative is sometimes expressed by the past participle, particularly when the idea of haste is to be conveyed; for instance, jetzt hinüber zu dem neuen Gewürzhändler, dann rechts und links gehorcht, rechts und links geantwortet, dann an die Börse, mit den Achseln gezuckt, den Geheimnißvollen gespielt, von wichtigen Nachrichten gemunkelt, die man empfangen haben will, und heruntergerissen, was man gern haben möchte. Ah, Freund, Sie kennen das ja! Now let us go to the new grocer opposite; let us listen on all sides, give answers on all sides. Then on change, let us shrug our shoulders, play the mysterious—let us whisper of news which we have received, and pull down (stock) which we should like to have. Ah, friend, you know this game well!

§ 5. ON THE USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

I. On the use of the Infinitive without the particle zu.

The infinitive without zu is used—

1. In subjective sentences; for instance, früh aufstehen, regelmäßig arbeiten, und zur Zeit der Ruhe pflegen, das erhält Körper und Geist gesund, getting up early, regular occupation, and timely rest, preserve the health of body and mind.

2. After the seven verbs of mood—dürfen, to dare; können, to be able; lassen, to let; mögen, to like; müssen, to be forced; sollen, to be obliged; wollen, to have a will; for instance, wir dürfen ihm nicht widersprechen, we dare not contradict him; sie kann zeichnen und malen, she understands drawing and painting; lassen Sie ihn nicht im Zorne scheiden, let him not go in anger; ich mag gerne in der See baden, I like to bathe in the sea; er muß nicht ungehorsam sein, he must not be disobedient; du sollst das thun, was deine Eltern wünschen, you ought to do what your parents bid you; er will nach Paris reisen, he intends going to Paris.

3. In the phrases—du hast gut lachen; er hat gut predigen, you can laugh in your sleeve; he can preach at his ease: du thust nichts als spielen, you do nothing but play.

4. After heißen, to order; nennen, to call; helfen, to help; lehren, to teach; lernen, to learn; machen, to make: for instance, er hieß mich gehen, he ordered me to go; das nenne ich fleißig sein, that I call being industrious; er half mir suchen, he assisted me in seeking; du lehrtest mich tanzen, you taught me dancing; er lernte schnell französisch sprechen, he

quickly learned to speak French; du machst mich lachen, you make me laugh.

5. After the verbs—sehen, to see; hören, to hear; fühlen, to feel; finden, to find; bleiben, to remain; fahren, to drive; reiten, to ride; haben, to have,—all of which are construed, also, with the participle present in English; for instance, ich sehe ihn eine seltsame Rolle spielen, I see him playing a curious character; du hörtest sie singen, you heard her singing; ich fühlte das Gewitter nahen, I felt the storm approaching; wir fanden ihn schreiben, we found him writing; sie blieben sitzen, they remained sitting; wir fuhren spazieren, we took a ride in a carriage; er ritt spazieren, he took a ride on horseback; sie hatte ein Tuch über dem Arme hangen, she had a shawl hanging over her arm.

II. On the use of the Infinitive with zu.

The infinitive with zu is used—

1. In subordinate sentences, to express the purpose or intention; for instance, er kam mir zu sagen, he came to tell me.

Obs. 1. Often the adverb um is put at the head of such sentences, in order more strongly to point out the intention; for instance, ich that das einzig, um dir zu gefallen, I did this only for the sake of pleasing you.

Obs. 2. In some phrases this infinitive is used without zu, particularly after verbs of motion, as gehen, sich legen, fahren, reiten; with the infinitives—schlafen, to sleep; essen, to eat; spazieren, to promenade, as ich gehe or ich lege mich schlafen, I go to bed; wir fahren or reiten spazieren, we take a ride. Also after stehen an infinitive without zu is often found, as was stehst du horchen? why are you standing there listening?

2. In objective sentences, after verbs, substantives, and adjectives, as ich wünsche zu lesen, I wish to read;

ich hoffe einen Brief zu erhalten, I hope to receive a letter; ich fürchte ihn anzureden, I am afraid of addressing him; ich glaube das zu verstehen, I think I do understand this; er hat einen großen Wunsch zu reisen, he has a great wish to travel; er ist begierig das Deutsche gut zu verstehen, he is desirous to understand German well.

3. In subjective sentences, when following an impersonal expression, as es ist nicht gut, eine Arbeit aufzuschieben, it is not good to postpone a task.

4. When the gerund is to be expressed; for instance, the English "it is to be praised," the Latin *laudandum est*, as es ist zu erwarten, it is to be expected; es steht zu hoffen, it is to be hoped.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

1. A passive notion is often contained in the infinitive active of German verbs, particularly after befehlen and lassen, to let; hören, to hear; bitten, to beg; for instance, er ließ den Stuhl ins Zimmer bringen, he ordered the chair to be brought into the room; ich hörte ihn loben, I heard how he was praised; wir bitten, auch uns nicht zu vergessen, we beg that we, also, may not be forgotten.

2. The infinitive present of the active is used instead of the past participle, when an infinitive precedes:

a. After the seven auxiliary verbs of mood—dürfen, können, lassen, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen; for instance, ich habe nicht sprechen dürfen (instead of gedurft), I have not been allowed to speak.

b. After heißen, to bid, helfen, hören, sehen, and sometimes after lernen and lehren; for instance, ich habe ihn gehen heißen, I have ordered him to go; sie hat mir es finden helfen, she has assisted me in finding it; er hat das Kind lesen lehren, he has taught the child to read; ich habe in England mich an viel

gewöhnen lernen, I have learned to inure myself to many things in England.

§ 6. ON THE USE OF PARTICIPLES IN GENERAL.

1. The participle is the verb, with its action and construction, in form of an adjective. When it is an attribute it stands before its substantive, and agrees with it in gender, case, and number; for instance, ein seine Eltern liebender Sohn, a son loving his parents; die von den Römern eroberten Länder, the countries conquered by the Romans. When used as a shortened adjective sentence, the participle stands at the end of it, and follows its substantive without any termination, as der König, so von allen seinen Unterthanen verlassen, the king, thus abandoned by all his subjects.

2. The participle of the future passive, terminating in Latin in *ndus*, as *laudandus*, in English "to be praised," is formed in German from the gerund zu loben with the termination d, as zu lobend, one to be praised. In this form it stands as an attribute before substantives; for instance, eine leicht zu besiegende Schwierigkeit, a difficulty easily to be overcome; ein sehr zu betraurendes Ereigniß, an occurrence much to be lamented; die zu entrichtenden Abgaben, the duties which are to be paid.

§ 7. ON THE USE OF PARTICIPLES PRESENT.

1. The participle present can be used—

a. As attribute; for instance, ein prahlender Mensch, a boasting man; eine tröstende Frau, a consoling woman; kochendes Wasser, boiling water; die schwindenden Jahre, the passing years.

b. As predicate, when the verb expresses a lasting

sufference, as die Gefahr ist drohend, the danger is threatening; er ist leidend, he is suffering.

c. As adverb; for instance, lebend und sterbend gab er ein gutes Beispiel, living and dying he gave a good example.

d. As substantive; for instance, der Kämpfende, the combatant; die Leidenden, the patients; das Täuschende dieser Erscheinung, the illusion of this appearance; das Glänzende dieses Schauspiels, the splendour of this spectacle.

2. The English way of expressing the lasting action of the verb by the auxiliary *to be* with the participle present is only known, in German, in the case mentioned under 1. *b.* In all other instances the simple verbal forms must be employed, as—I am standing, ich stehe; I have been writing, ich habe geschrieben; the coat is being made, der Rock wird gemacht.

Obs. The phrase, *I am going to write*, which denotes the commencing of the action, must be circumscribed in German, as ich bin im Begriffe zu schreiben, or ich werde sogleich schreiben.

3. The participle present is often used, in English, in shortened sentences. Such as—

a. In subjective sentences; for instance, "*playing* cannot be called work."

b. In objective sentences, as "he refused *listening*."

c. In adjective sentences, as "a man *assisting* the poor."

d. In adverbial sentences, as "he wrote to me on *arriving* in town."

In all these cases the German language uses different constructions.

In the first class of sentences, under *a*, the participle present is expressed either by an infinitive or

substantive, as Spielen or das Spiel kann nicht Arbeiten genannt werden.

In the second class of sentences, under *b*, the object is rendered (1) by an infinitive with zu, when the shortened sentence contains the same subject as the main one; for instance, er hatte den Ehrgeiz berühmte Leute an sich zu ziehen, he had the ambition of attracting celebrated people to his court; ich bin begierig zu wissen, I am desirous of knowing: (2) by a relative sentence introduced by daß, when the subjects are different, as ich zweifle, daß er komme, I doubt his coming: or (3) in both cases by a verbal substantive, as ich bin des Sehens müde, I am tired of seeing; ich bezweifle sein Kommen, I doubt his coming.

In the third class of sentences, under *c*, the participle can either be rendered by an adjective sentence, as ein Mann, der den Armen beisteht, a man assisting the poor: or by making the participle an attributive adjective, as ein den Armen helfender Mann.

In the fourth class of sentences, under *d*, the participle has the signification of a gerund, and is always accompanied by an adverb, as "without saying," "far from despising," "in doing," "on arriving," &c. This class is rendered in the following way:

1. When the participial expression implies time, it is translated, when the time is present, by an adverbial sentence introduced by wie, als, sobald, indem; or by a verbal substantive with the preposition bei or auf: and, when the time is past, by an adverbial sentence with nachdem; for instance, wie ich das erblickte, sagte ich, upon seeing this, I said; als er den

Brief las, erblaßte er, at reading the letter he turned pale; sobald ich eintrat, hörte ich das Geräusch, on entering I heard the noise; indem er das Fenster aufmachte, flog der Vogel fort, whilst opening the window the bird flew away; beim Eintreten bemerkte ich, on entering I perceived; auf mein wiederholtes Fragen, upon my repeatedly questioning; nachdem er also gesprochen hatte, verließ er das Haus, after having spoken in this way, he left the house.

2. When the participial expression implies mode or manner, it is rendered (*a*) by the infinitive with zu and the *particle* of the participial expression, when the subject is the same as in the main sentence; for instance, ich ging fort, ohne ein Wort zu sagen, I went away without saying a word: or (*b*) by an adverbial sentence, introduced by the *particle* of the participial expression and daß, indiscriminately if the subjects are the same or different, as ich zahlte das Geld, ohne daß ich ein Wort sagte, I paid the money without saying a word; er ging fort, ohne daß ich ihn zurückhielt, he went away without my retaining him.

3. When the participial expression implies cause and effect, it is translated (*a*) by a substantive with a preposition, as ich war im Finden dieses Buches recht glücklich, I was lucky in finding this book; er war durch den Verlust seines Vermögens sehr betrübt, he was much distressed in losing his fortune: or (*b*) by an adverbial sentence, introduced by a relative conjunction of cause and effect, and preceded by a demonstrative adverb, formed of the *particle* which accompanies the participle; for instance, he was sorry at losing his fortune, er war deßhalb betrübt, weil er sein Vermögen verlor; your purpose can only be obtained by violating the laws of humanity, Euer Zweck kann

nur dadurch erreicht werden, indem (or daß) Ihr die Gesetze der Menschlichkeit verletzet; much time was lost in discussing all these points, viele Zeit ward damit vergeudet, daß man alle diese Punkte besprach; it might happen from his staying up so late, es mochte daher kommen, daß er so spät aufblieb; in saying that I am injured, I do not mean to assert, wenn ich sage, daß mir Unrecht geschah, will ich damit nicht behaupten.

§ 8. ON THE USE OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

1. The participle past can be used either as an attribute or predicate; for instance, der geliebte Vater, the beloved father; ein Mann ist hoch geachtet, a man is highly esteemed.

Obs. The past participle, as attribute, can always be changed into a relative sentence; for instance, ein dem Studiren ergebener Mann, can be changed into ein Mann, der dem Studiren ergeben ist, a man who is given to study. On the other side, many adjective sentences can be changed into attributive participles by leaving out the pronoun relative and the verbs sein or werden; for instance, "a child which is neglected" is ein Kind, welches vernachläßigt wird, or ein vernachläßigtes Kind.

2. The past participle, as predicate, either refers (*a*) to the action of the verb; for instance, er wurde ergriffen, als ich ins Haus trat, he was seized at my entering the house: or (*b*) to the quality of an adjective; for instance, I am acquainted with him, ich bin mit ihm bekannt. In the first case the participle is construed with werden, like all verbs passive; in the second, with sein, like all adjectives. Thus, he *is being* killed, is er wird getödtet; but, he *is* killed, er ist getödtet. He is *known to me*, er ist mir bekannt; but, he is *known by me*, er wird von mir gekannt.

3. Many past participles have entirely adopted the nature of adjectives, as abgelebt, decayed; verſeſſen, bent upon; vertraut, familiar; angeſeſſen, settled; verlegen, embarrassed; gewohnt, accustomed; verwirrt, puzzled; erſchöpft, exhausted; entſchloſſen, resolved; verſtohlen, secret; gewogen, favourably inclined; beredt, eloquent; geſcheidt, clever; beſcheiden, modest; gediegen, solid; gewandt, versatile; unverhohlen, unrestrained, open.

Obs. Some of these forms, when used as participles, sound differently, as beredet, persuaded; geſchieden, separated; beſchieden, destined; gewendet, turned; gewöhnt, inured; verhehlt, concealed.

4. It lies in the nature of the past participle to have a passive meaning; however there are some, in German, with which an active notion is combined; for instance, beritten, having a horse; bedient, serving; beſorgt, careful (having care); betrübt, afflicting, as eine betrübte (instead of betrübende) Nachricht, distressing news; eingebildet, conceited, as ein eingebildeter Menſch, a man who imagines himself to be great; erfahren, experienced (*i. e.* having experience); geſchworen, a juror (*i. e.* one who has sworn, cf. *juratus* in Latin); verdient, deserving; vergeſſen, forgetting (in compounds, like pflichtvergeſſen, forgetting one's duty); verſucht, tried (*i. e.* one who has tried many things); verſchwiegen, reserved (*i. e.* keeping silence); ſtudirt, studied (*i. e.* a man who has studied).

5. Many past participles, expressing motion and sound, are united like adverbs to kommen, as gegangen kommen, to come along walking; gelaufen kommen, to come running; gefahren kommen, to come riding; angeſegelt kommen, to come sailing, &c. The par-

ticiples past here have the meaning of participles present (cf. § 7. 1. *c*).

6. The past participle is often used instead of an imperative, as umgekehrt! turn about! wohl aufgemerkt! pay attention! nur hierher gebracht! without ceremony! bring it this way (cf. § 4. 3. *Obs.* 2).

CHAP. IV.—ON THE USE OF THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

§ 1. ON THE USE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

1. The auxiliaries haben and sein can be omitted, in subordinate sentences, in the past compound tenses; for instance, ich zweifle, ob er das gesagt (hat), I doubt if he has said this; glaubst du, daß er gestern angekommen (ist)? do you think that he arrived yesterday?

2. The auxiliary werden is often used (*a*) as neuter; for instance, da werden Weiber zu Hyänen, women then change into hyenas; wie wird mir? how do I feel? (*b*) as passive (cf. *fieri* in Latin), elliptically for "to be given," "to be made;" for instance, heute muß die Glocke werden, to-day the bell must be formed; dazu ward ihm der Verstand, understanding was given to him for that purpose; Recht soll euch werden, justice shall be done to you.

3. The forms ward, wardst, ward, for wurde, wurdest, wurde, are rarely used, and generally by poets.

§ 2. ON THE USE OF THE PASSIVE.

1. Verbs neuter cannot have a passive voice: however, when a lively transaction is described, a passive is used in the third person singular neuter, as es wird getanzt, they are dancing; es wird gelacht, gesprungen, gejubelt, they are laughing, springing, rejoicing; ge=

wöhnlich ward durch Sachsenhausen spaziert; und die Ueberfahrt für einen Kreuzer gar behaglich genossen, we generally walked through Sachsenhausen, and enjoyed the passage for one penny very comfortably.

2. Verbs which are construed with a genitive or dative, as er spottete meiner, he mocked me, du schmeichelst mir, you flatter me, cannot be used in the passive, like in English. It cannot be said literally in German, "I was mocked by him," or "I am flattered by you." The way to translate such sentences is this—the nominative is changed into a dative with von, the verb active into the same tense of the third person singular neuter passive, and the genitive and dative remain unaltered; therefore, von ihm wurde meiner gespottet, or es wurde meiner von ihm gespottet; es wird mir von dir geschmeichelt, or mir wird von dir geschmeichelt. Therefore the English, "I was given to understand by him," which is the passive of "he gave me to understand," is, in German, von ihm wurde mir zu verstehen gegeben.

§ 3. ON THE USE OF VERBS NEUTER.

1. Neuter verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary haben—

a. When they express a lasting condition, as ich habe geweint, geschlafen, geruht, gestanden, I have been crying, sleeping, resting, standing.

b. When they express a motion, without reference to the places of issue and aim; for instance, ich habe gereist, gelaufen, gesprungen, getanzt, geritten, I have been travelling, running, springing, dancing, riding.

Obs. Gehen, to go, and bleiben, to remain, are always, and stehen, liegen, sitzen, to stand, to lie, to sit, are sometimes conjugated with sein.

2. Neuter verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary sein, when the subject is represented in reference—

a. To a suffering or changing condition, as ich bin gefallen, I have fallen; es ist gesunken, it has sunk; das Schiff ist gescheitert, the ship is wrecked; das Glas ist geborsten, the glass has burst; es ist geglückt, gelungen, it has succeeded; ich bin verarmt, I have fallen into poverty; er ist erkrankt, he has fallen ill; er ist gestorben, he has died; es ist geschehen, it has happened.

b. To the beginning or aim of a motion; for instance, er ist geflohen, he has run away; er ist fortgezogen, he has removed; er ist abgereist, he has departed; er ist angelangt, he is arrived.

3. Many neuter verbs can be conjugated with haben and sein, according to the meaning which they imply; for instance,

ich habe gefahren, I have been driving.
ich bin gefahren, I have taken a ride.

ich habe fortgefahren, I have continued driving.
ich bin fortgefahren, I have gone away in a carriage.

ich habe gefroren, I have felt cold.
es ist gefroren, it is frozen.
es hat gefroren, it has been freezing.

das Kind hat gesprungen, the child has been jumping.
der Kessel ist gesprungen, the kettle has burst.

4. Many neuter verbs can be conjugated with haben and sein, although retaining the same signification. But they are conjugated—

a. With haben, when reference is made to *time*, *art*, *purpose*, as answers to the questions—wann? wie lange? wie? when? how long? how?—for instance, ich habe lange geritten, I have taken a long ride; ich habe diesen Morgen geritten, I have taken a ride this

morning; ich habe geschwind, langsam, gut geritten, I have been riding quickly, slowly, well; ich habe fortgeritten, I have continued riding; ich habe ihm vorgeritten, I have shown him how to ride; ich habe ihm nachgeritten, I have imitated his riding.

b. With sein, when reference is made to *place*, and to *a certain point in space*, as answers to the questions wohin? whither? woher? whence? wie weit? how far? —for instance, ich bin nach Hause geritten, I rode home; ich bin über einen Graben geritten, I leapt over a ditch on horseback; ich bin zehn Meilen geritten, I rode ten miles: therefore it must be said—er hat vortrefflich gesprungen, he has made an excellent bound; but, er ist vom Baume gesprungen, he has jumped from the tree; ich habe sehr geeilt, I have made great haste; but, ich bin fort geeilt, I have hastened away; ich habe zwei Jahre gereist, I have been travelling for two years; but, ich bin nach England gereist, I have made a journey to England.

§ 4. ON VERBS REFLECTIVE.

1. Verbs reflective are (*a*) either real; or (*b*) nominal. Real are those the action of which can only refer to the subject; for instance, ich schäme mich, I am ashamed; ich besinne mich, I remember; ich erhole mich, I recover. But nominal are all those which indiscriminately refer to the subject or to other objects; for instance, ich bestrafe mich (or ihn), I punish myself (or *him*); ich preise mich (or ihn) nicht, I do not praise myself (or *him*).

2. Real reflectives are (*a*) simple verbs, as ich sehne mich, I long for: or (*b*) compounds of verbs neuter with an adjective or adverbial expression, into the state of which latter the subject gets, by doing what the

verb implies; for instance, ich esse mich satt, I appease my hunger; ich spiele mich müde, I tire myself by playing; ich spreche mich heiser, I make myself hoarse by talking; ich arbeite mich zu Schanden, I ruin myself by working.

3. Nominal reflectives, like sich bewegen, to move one's-self, are in *form* active, but in point of *meaning* passive, like bewegt werden, to be moved. However, they differ in as far from passive verbs, as the subject of the latter is acted upon by another agent, whilst that of the first is acted upon by itself; for instance, das Schiff wird von dem Winde bewegt, the ship is moved by the wind; but, das Schiff bewegt sich von selbst, the ship moves by its own impulse: der Schlüssel ist von dem Knaben gefunden worden, the key has been found by the boy; but, der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden, the key has been found (without reference to the finder). Therefore it is said—die Sonne senkt sich zum Untergange, the sun inclines towards setting; die Erde dreht sich um ihre Achse, the earth turns around its own axis; das lernt sich leicht, that is easily learned.

4. Reflective verbs are, also, frequently used in impersonal constructions, as es ruht sich gut unter diesem Baume, a good resting-place is under this tree; es läßt sich leicht denken, it can easily be imagined; es singt sich schön in diesem Zimmer, one can sing well in this room; es begiebt sich, ereignet sich, trägt sich zu, it happens, it occurs.

5. Reflective verbs are often used for reciprocals, as sie lieben sich (instead of einander), they love each other; wir erfreuen uns (instead of einander), we comfort each other; thus, also, wir schlagen uns, we fight a duel; wir schmeicheln uns, we flatter each other; wir trösten uns, we console each other; die Thiere beißen sich, the animals bite each other.

Obs. The reciprocal sich zanken, to quarrel with, is always used as reflective when no preposition follows, and it is said,—sie zanken sich (not einander), or sie zanken mit einander, they quarrel with each other.

§ 5. ON THE USE OF THE VERBS OF MOOD.

1. The German language has seven verbs of mood: dürfen, können, lassen, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen.

2. Six of these stand in correlative reference to each other, namely—

I.	II.
können, to be able	müssen, to be obliged
dürfen, to be allowed	sollen, to follow another's will
mögen, to like	wollen, to follow one's own will.

The first class expresses a possibility, the second a necessity: so that the notion of the first verb in each depends upon the law of nature, the second upon the law or will of another person, the third upon one's own liking or wish;—for instance, die Vögel können fliegen, birds can fly; wir dürfen keine Sklaven halten, the law forbids us to keep slaves; sie mag tanzen so viel sie wünscht, she *may* dance as much as she likes; wir müssen zuweilen der Ruhe pflegen, we must rest occasionally; wir sollen unsern Nächsten lieben, we ought to love our neighbours; ich will dich von Herzen lieben, I will love thee with all my heart.

Obs. 1. The first class often expresses a logical possibility; for instance, es kann sein, it may be; er kann es vergessen haben, it is possible he has forgotten it; er mag ein ehrlicher Mann sein, it may be, it is possible that he is an honest man; daraus dürfte Nichts werden, it is possible that nothing will come from this; jetzt dürfte es zu spät sein, it is possible that it is now too late.

Obs. 2. The second class often expresses (*a*) a moral necessity; for instance, wir müssen dem Gesetze nach handeln, we are obliged to act according to law: and (*b*) a logical necessity; in this case, müssen refers to an assertion of the speaker; sollen, to that of other people; and wollen, to the assertion of an individual: for instance, er muß verreist sein, I am sure he is gone on a journey; er soll verreist sein, people say, *or* it is said, that he is gone on a journey, *or* he is said to have gone on a journey; er will es gesehen haben, he maintains that he has seen it.

3. The seventh verb, lassen, is the English *to let*, and is often connected with an active infinitive, which has a passive meaning, as er ließ ihn bestrafen, he ordered him to be punished (cf. Gen. Obs. 1. p. 237).

4. These seven verbs have some particulars in common.

a. They are construed with an infinitive without zu, as ich kann nicht gut reiten, I cannot ride well (cf. § 5. 2. p. 235).

b. Their past participles are changed into infinitives when following an infinitive (cf. p. 237, Gen. Obs. 2. *a*); for instance, man hätte sich kein glücklicheres Leben denken können (instead of gekonnt), one could not have imagined a happier life; der Gärtner hat bestochen werden sollen (instead of gesollt), the gardener was to have been bribed; der König hatte ihm sagen lassen (instead of gelassen), the king had ordered him to be informed; er hatte nicht allein reisen wollen (instead of gewollt), he did not wish to travel alone.

c. In the future and conditional perfect the construction is changed, and the auxiliary haben placed before the infinitive; for instance, er wird nicht haben schreiben können, perhaps he was not able to write;

man würde nicht haben scherzen sollen, one would not have been allowed to jest.

Obs. This change of construction is also observed, when a compound tense of a verb of mood stands in a relative sentence (cf. p. 185, *Obs.* 2); for instance, es war keiner da, der die Zügel hätte ergreifen können, there were none there who could have seized the reins; mir wird gesagt, daß ich als Kind nicht allein habe ausgehen dürfen, I am told that, when a child, I was not allowed to go out alone; ich glaube, daß dieser Brief schon gestern hätte beantwortet werden müssen, I think this letter ought to have been answered yesterday; ich fürchte, daß wir diesen Eifer werden theuer bezahlen müssen, I am afraid we shall be obliged to pay dearly for this rashness; du sagtest, daß er deßhalb nicht wird getadelt werden können, you told me that we shall not be able to blame him on that account.

d. In order to avoid an accumulation of infinitives, the conditionals and future perfect are avoided, and the subjunctives imperfect and pluperfect used instead of the first, and the perfect instead of the second (cf. p. 232, 2); for instance, ich mochte auch gern etwas davon wissen (instead of ich würde .... wissen mögen), I should also like to know something of it; ich dürfte ihm das nicht sagen (instead of ich würde .... sagen dürfen), I should not dare to tell him that; man hätte in seiner Gegenwart nicht scherzen sollen (instead of man würde .... haben scherzen sollen), one would not have been allowed to jest in his presence; sobald ich es habe thun können, as soon as I shall be able to do it.

e. The English verbs of mood are defective in their conjugation, and several ways are tried in order to supply their wants: for instance, in the perfect, there being no participles past of "I can," "I will," "I must," "I shall," &c., the forms are circumscribed

by "I have been able," "I have wished," "I have been obliged;" or the presents are used with infinitives past, as "I can have done" (*potui facere; j'ai pu faire*), "I must have perished" (*debebam perire; j'ai dû périr*). Now, the German verbs of mood being complete in their conjugation, such contrivances are not necessary, and sentences like "I must have died," "I could have slept," "I ought to have written," must be translated—ich habe sterben müssen, ich hätte schlafen können, ich hätte schreiben sollen.

SECTION IV.—ON THE USE OF PARTICLES.

CHAP. I.—ON THE USE OF ADVERBS.

1. The superlative of the adverb is formed in many ways (cf. p. 131, 132); and also

a. With am and the dative of the superlative, as er hat es am besten gethan, he has done it best.

b. With aufs and the accusative, as er hat es aufs beste gethan, he has done it best; er hat mich aufs tiefste gekränkt, he has grieved me to the quick.

In the first, reference is made to other objects—he has done it best *of all;* in the second, the comparison is absolute—he has done it *in the best way possible,* without reference to others.

Obs. Mark the difference: wenigstens is *at least,* am wenigsten, *least of all,*—as wenigstens gesteh die Wahrheit, at least confess the truth; er sprach am wenigsten, he spoke less than any one else: meistens, mostly, generally; am meisten, most, as meistens stehe ich um sieben auf, I generally get up at seven; das am meisten besuchte Haus, the house most frequented.

2. The interrogative adverbs *where from? where to?* are often separated, and thus, also, woher? and

wohin? as wo kommt er her? where does he come from? wo gehen Sie hin? where do you go to?

3. Many adverbs of place are used in a particular way; thus

1. Auf, in the meaning of *open*, is combined with active verbs, as mache die Thüre auf, open the door: but offen with verbs neuter, as das Fenster war offen, the window was open; das Thor stand offen, the gate stood open.

2. Umher means *to and fro*, as umher reisen, to travel about; herum, around, in a circle, as um eine Insel herumsegeln, to circumnavigate an island.

3. Adverbs compounded with her, as herein, in; herauf, up; heraus, out, &c., imply *an approach to* the speaking person, as komm herein, come in (to me); steige herauf, mount up (to me); sieh heraus, look out (towards me). But those compounded with hin, as hinein, hinauf, hinaus, &c., denote a *withdrawing from* the speaking person, as geh hinein, go into (the room, away from me); reite hinauf, ride up (whilst I remain below); wirf hinaus, throw out (whilst I am within).

4. Adverbs of place are often used after prepositions with their cases, to point out the direction more clearly, as von dem Ufer aus, in the direction from the shore; zum Fenster hinaus, out through the window; über alles hin, over all things away.

5. Hin and her, *to* and *fro*, are often used to denote a variety or indifference, as ich dachte hin und her, I thought of many means; Kaiserlich hin, Kaiserlich her, you speak about the emperor! what is he to me?

4. Some adverbs of time are also peculiar in their use: thus—

1. The English *this day week*, when referring to the past, is heute vor acht Tagen; and when to the future, heute über acht Tage. Thus, also, gestern vor einem Jahre, it was yesterday a twelvemonth; but, morgen über ein Jahr, to-morrow after a twelvemonth; heute vor vierzehn Tagen, to-day fortnight; heute über vierzehn Tage, this day after a fortnight.

2. Einmal means (*a*) *once*, as ich sah ihn nur einmal, I only saw him once: (*b*) it lays a stress on a thing which cannot be changed, as es ist nun einmal so, once for all, this thing is so, and you cannot alter it; das Buch ist nun einmal gedruckt, the book is now printed, and it cannot be otherwise: (*c*) to lay a stress on the verb, as ich muß einmal danach sehen, I must look after it.

3. Jetzt, now, refers to the present moment, as jetzt haben wir Ruhe, now we have peace: but nun, now, is the present moment in reference to circumstances before mentioned; therefore it is often used for the causal da, since, as a relative particle; for instance, nun Gott uns so segnete, laßt uns danken, since God has thus blessed us, let us give thanks.

4. Noch means (*a*) *yet*, as er kann noch kommen, he may come yet; noch nicht, not yet: (*b*) *still*, as ich bin noch hier, I am still here; noch mehr, *still* more; (*c*) *as yet*, as noch bin ich zufrieden, as yet I am satisfied: (*d*) *more* (*encore*), as noch einmal, once more; noch zweimal, twice more; noch Etwas, something more; noch ein Jahr, one year longer (*encore une année*): (*e*) *however*, before adjectives preceded by wenn and followed by so, as wenn auch noch so gut, however so good: (*f*) as a conjunction it is *nor*, weder groß noch klein, neither large nor small.

5. Erſt means (*a*) *at first*, and refers to the predicate, as erſt arbeite, dann ruhe, first work and then rest: (*b*) *not until, not sooner than*, and refers to an adverbial expression of time, as erſt jetzt, not till this moment; er war erſt zehn Jahr alt, he was not more than ten years old; am Abend erſt ſchätzt man das Haus, it is not until evening-time that one values one's hearth; erſt am Morgen, not before morning: (*c*) *only, not but*, as erſt die geſammelte Kraft findet ihr Zeit, *only* unremitting energy finds its aim.

6. Nachher means *after*, in reference to a certain action, as ich las das Buch, und nachher ſchlief ich, I read the book, and then I slept; but hernach means *after*, in reference to the moment when the addressing person is speaking, as ich werde es dir hernach ſagen, I will tell it you afterwards.

7. Schon is (*a*) an adverb of time, and means *already*, as es donnert ſchon eine ganze Stunde, the thunder has lasted already a whole hour; (*b*) an adverb of mode, and expresses the affirmation of the speaker, as es geſchieht Euch ſchon ganz recht, I am sure you only have your due; es iſt ſchon ganz recht, I am sure it is quite right; ich will es ſchon einrichten, I assure you, I'll arrange it.

8. The English "early this morning, to-morrow morning" are, in German, heute früh, morgen früh.

9. Sonſt means (*a*) *formerly*, as ſonſt war es anders, *formerly* it was otherwise: (*b*) *else*, as ſonſt gehe ich nicht, *else* I do not go.

5. Of the peculiarity of adverbs of mode the following is to be remarked:

1. Als and wie are the English *as, like*, when two predicates are compared; for instance, er benahm ſich als or wie ein König, he behaved like a king: but als

denotes the identity, wie the similitude; er benahm sich als ein König means—he was a king, and behaved as such; wie ein König would imply—he behaved like a king, although he was none.

2. Gern means (*a*) *with pleasure, willingly;* as ich thue es gern, I do it with pleasure: (*b*) combined with a verb finite, it corresponds to the English *I like* with an infinitive or gerund, as ich schlafe gern in einem kühlen Zimmer, I like to sleep in a cool room; er trinkt den Rheinwein nicht gern, he does not like drinking hock. The comparative lieber corresponds to the English *I like better*, and the superlative, am liebsten, *I like best*, as ich reise lieber in Gesellschaft, I like better, or I prefer travelling in company; ich höre Musik am liebsten des Abends, I like to hear music best of an evening.

3. Selbst is (*a*) *even*, when an adverb, as der Tod selbst ist nicht bitter, even death is not bitter: (*b*) *self*, when a pronoun, as unter dem Unglücke seines Nächsten leidet er selbst, he suffers *himself* by the misfortune of his fellow-man.

4. Ja means (*a*) *yes*, as sage mir ja, oder nein, say *yes* or *no:* (*b*) *yea*, as ja, ein Feind hätte nicht so gehandelt, yea, even an enemy would not have acted thus: (*c*) corresponds to the English insertion *you know*, and refers to the experience of the addressed person; for instance, die Menschen wollen es ja nicht eher glauben, als bis sie es gesehen, people, you know, would not believe it, until they have seen; das ist ja recht schwer, you must know, this is very difficult: (*d*) the English *by all means*, as überlege ja erst, by all means consider first; thue es ja nicht, do not do it by any means: (*e*) *certainly;* with wohl, freilich, and doch, expressing impatience, as ja wohl, ja freilich hab' ich es

gethan! I have done it, what then! es ist so, ja doch! it is true, what now!

5. Denn, then, is used (*a*) in conclusions, as so sei es denn, let it then be so: (*b*) in questions, as warst du denn auch da? were you (then) also there? (*c*) as much as, *except*, as ich gehe, es sei denn, daß er mich um Verzeihung bitte, I go except, or unless, he begs my pardon: (*d*) in relative sentences, to lay a stress on the assertion of the verb, as was er denn auch wirklich ausführte, what he also, indeed, carried out; er zog in den Wald, wo er denn auch endlich starb, he removed to the forest, where he really died at last: (*e*) instead of als, than, to avoid the repetition of the word, as er war besser als Dichter denn als Mensch, he was better as a poet than as a man: (*f*) as conjunction, in the meaning of *for*, as ich kann nicht ausgehen, denn ich bin krank, I cannot go out, for I am indisposed.

6. Doch means (*a*) *still*, as er hat mich beleidigt, und doch (or dennoch) bleibe ich sein Freund, he has offended me, and still I remain his friend: (*b*) *however*, as wir reisten zusammen, doch (or indessen) nur kurze Zeit, we were travelling together, however, only for a short time: (*c*) it is used to affirm an opinion, to lay stress on a question, assertion, wish, and request, as es ist nicht wahr, nein doch! it is not true, certainly not! ich gestehe es, ja doch! I confess it, I grant you! thue mir doch den Gefallen, pray do me that favour; du kommst doch? I hope you will come? das verdroß mich denn doch, that certainly did annoy me; Ihr denkt doch nicht, daß ich umsonst gesprochen? I hope you do not think that I have spoken in vain? hab' ich's doch gedacht! indeed, I thought so!

CHAP. II.—ON THE USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

§ 1. ON THE POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

The prepositions stand before their cases, except:

a. Wegen, on account; nach, according; ungeachtet, notwithstanding; trotz, in spite; zufolge, in accordance; entlang, along, which can stand either before or after their cases; for instance,

wegen dieser Handlung, on account of this action
meines Vaters wegen, on account of my father

nach meinem Wunsche, after my wish
der Reihe nach, by turns, in rotation

ungeachtet dieser Warnung, notwithstanding this warning
dieser Drohung ungeachtet, notwithstanding this threat

trotz meines Befehles, in spite of my command
mir zum Trotz, in defiance of me

zufolge deiner Anordnung, in consequence of thy arrangement
seiner Vorschrift zufolge, in accordance with his prescription

entlang des Flusses, along the river
das Ufer entlang, along the shore.

b. Halben and halber, for the sake; entgegen, opposed; gemäß, according; zuwider, against; gegenüber, opposite, which always stand after their cases, as

meinethalben, for my sake; des Bruders halber, for the sake of the brother
meinen Grundsätzen entgegen, in opposition to my principles
meinem Geschmacke zuwider, against my taste
dem Hause gegenüber, opposite to the house
der Anordnung gemäß, in accordance with the arrangement.

(*c*) Um willen, for the sake, the first part of which stands before the substantive, and the second after, as um des Himmels willen, for heaven's sake.

§ 2. ON THE USE OF PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE.

Anſtatt or ſtatt, instead of; for instance, anſtatt or ſtatt meines Bruders, instead of my brother.

Obs. Anſtatt is often separated, and the genitive is placed between the two compounds, but then Statt is written with a capital, as an Kindes Statt annehmen, to adopt as a child. It is to remarked that, in the phrase an meiner Statt, in my stead, Statt is a substantive, and meiner a pronoun possessive, and not the genitive of the personal pronoun.

halb, halben, halber, for the sake; halb is only used in compounds, as deshalb, on that account; derenthalb, on their account. Halben is used (*a*) after substantives, accompanied by an article or adjective, as der Dankbarkeit halben, for the sake of gratitude; eurer Geſundheit halben, for the sake of your health: (*b*) after personal pronouns, as meinethalben, for my sake. Halber is only used after substantives, particularly when standing by themselves, as Vertrauens halber, for the sake of confidence.

Obs. Misled by this analogy, ungrammatical words, like Krankheits halber, on account of illness, have been formed.

außerhalb, outside, as außerhalb des Gebäudes, on the outside of the building.

innerhalb, inside, is used (*a*) of place, as innerhalb der Stadt, within the town: (*b*) with sections of time, as innerhalb eines Tages, Monats, Jahres, within a day, a month, a year.

oberhalb, above, as oberhalb des Berges, above the mountain.

unterhalb, below, as unterhalb des Berges, at the foot of, below the mountain.

kraft, by authority, as kraft meines Amtes, by authority of my office.

mittelst (mittels), vermittelst, by means, as vermittelst eines Briefes, by means of a letter.

diesseit, on this side; for instance, diesseit des Flusses, on this side of the river.

jenseit, on that side, as jenseit des Feldes, on the other side of the field.

Obs. The forms diesseits and jenseits can be used as prepositions and adverbs.

um—willen, for the sake, on account, as um des Freundes willen, for the sake of my friend; um der Mordthat willen, on account of the murder.

ungeachtet, notwithstanding, as ihrer Tugenden ungeachtet, notwithstanding her virtues.

unweit, unfern, not far from, as unweit, unfern des Waldes, not far from the forest.

vermöge, by dint of, as vermöge meines Auftrags, by dint of, in accordance with my commission.

während, during, as während des Sommers, during summer; während der Stunde, during the lesson.

wegen, on account of, as euertwegen, on account of you.

Obs. The form von—wegen, as von Rechts wegen, von Amts wegen, out of respect to justice, to my office, is antiquated.

§ 3. ON THE PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE.

Laut, in accordance with (the substance of things written or spoken), governs the dative only, when the substantive stands by itself; for instance, laut Briefen, according to letters; but, laut der Briefe, according to the letters.

längs, along, as längs des Gestades, along the strand; längs dem Graben, along the ditch.

trotz, in spite, as trotz der vielen Soldaten, in spite of the great number of soldiers; trotz Königen und Fürsten, in spite of kings and princes.

zufolge, according, stands before the genitive, and after the dative, as zufolge dessen, or dem zufolge, according to it.

Obs. Entlang, along, is the only preposition which governs the three cases; it stands *after* the accusative, as entlang des Flusses or dem Flusse, or den Fluß entlang, along the river.

§ 4. ON THE PREPOSITIONS WITH A DATIVE.

Aus, means—1. *out of*, as aus dem Fenster, out of the window; aus Liebe, out of love.

2. *From*, as aus der Stadt kommen, to come from town.

3. *Of*, as einer aus der Menge, one of the crowd; ein Gefäß aus Thon, a vessel of clay.

außer means—1. *outside*, as außer dem Hause, outside the house.

2. *Beside*, as außer sich sein, to be beside one's-self.

3. *Except*, as alle außer ihm, all except him.

Obs. In the phrase—außer Landes sein, to be away from the country, it is construed with a genitive.

bei means—1. *near by*, as die Schlacht bei Leipzig, the battle (fought) near Leipzic; ich redete den Nächsten bei mir an, I addressed him next to me.

2. *At, during, in*, as beim größten Mangel, during the greatest want; bei Mondschein, by moonlight; beim Essen, at dinner; bei Nacht, at, during night time; bei unsern Zeiten, in our times; bei Gelegenheit, occasionally; bei meinem gefährlichen Falle war

es ein Glück, at my dangerous fall it was fortunate; bei guten Wegen kann man schnell reisen, on good roads one can travel quickly.

3. *With, among* (*chez*), as bei den Russen werden die Hunde als Zugthiere gebraucht, among the Russians dogs are used as beasts of burden; er speist bei mir, he dines with me (*i. e.* in my house), whilst er speist mit mir would imply, he dines in my company (anywhere); ich wohne bei meinem Vater, I live at my father's; diese Aeußerung erweckte bei mir den Wunsch, this expression awakened in me the wish; ich habe kein Geld bei mir, I have no money with me.

4. *By*, as er nahm ihn bei der Hand, he took him by the hand; beim Himmel! by heaven! bei meiner Ehre! by, upon my honour!

5. *In possession of*, as bei Gelde sein, to have money; bei Kräften, Jahren, Sinnen sein, to have strength, years, one's senses; bei guter Stimme sein, to be in good voice.

binnen, within (only used of time), as binnen drei Tagen, within three days.

entgegen, opposed to, as er segelt dem Winde entgegen, he sails against the wind; er handelt mir entgegen, he acts in opposition to me.

gegenüber, opposite to, in comparison with, as er wohnt mir gegenuber, he lives opposite to me; dem Kaiser gegenüber erschienen alle klein, in comparison with the emperor they all appeared little.

gemäß, in accordance with, as deinem Wunsche gemäß, according to your wish; dem Herkommen gemäß, according to custom.

mit means—1. *with*, as mit der Feder in der Hand, with the pen in one's hand.

2. *By means of*, as mit List ausführen, to carry out by means of (with) cunning.

nach means—1. *towards* (a place), as nach der Schule, Kirche, Stadt gehen, to go to school, church, town.

2. *After*, as einer nach dem Andern, one after another.

3. *According*, as nach dem Rechte, according to right; ich lebe nach meiner Weise, I live according to (after) my fashion.

4. *In reference to*, as der Beschäftigung nach, in reference to one's occupation; dem Benehmen nach, in reference to one's conduct.

nächst, next, as nächst meinem Vater ist er mein bester Freund, next (or, after) my father he is my best friend.

nebst, sammt, together with; they are synonymous—but nebst combines things which are foreign to each other, whilst sammt connects only those which naturally belong together, as das Haus nebst den Büchern, the house and the books; der Vater sammt Mutter und Kindern, the father with the mother and the children.

ob, which is now antiquated, means—1. *over*, as das Schwert ob seinem Haupte, the sword over his head.

2. *On account*, as ob dem neuen Regiment, on account of the new government. In this meaning it is often construed with the genitive, as ob des seltsamen Geräths, on account of the strange vessel.

seit, since, as seit der Zeit, since that time; seit dem letzten Kriege, since the last war.

von means—1. *from*, as von dem Berge kommen, to come from the mountain; ich habe nichts von ihm gehört, I have had no news from him.

2. *With*, as von etwas beginnen, to begin with something; von ganzem Herzen, with all the heart.

3. *Of*, as viele von Euch, many of you; von einer Sache sprechen, to speak of (about) a thing; ein Ring von Gold, a ring (made) of gold; klein von Gestalt, of small stature; ein Gemälde von Raphael, a picture of Raphaello's.

4. *By* (before the agent after the passive), as er wird von mir gelobt, he is praised by me.

5. *Upon*, as es hängt von mir ab, it depends upon me.

zu is used—1. in the meaning of *at*, *in*, as zu London, in London; zu Hause, at home; hier zu Lande, in this country; zu Anfang, in the beginning; zur Zeit, at the time; zum ersten Male, at the first time; zur glücklichen Stunde, (*à la bonne heure*) in a good hour; zur Hand, at hand.

2. *Towards* (a person), as komme zu mir, come to me; zum Grafen gehen, to go to the count.

Obs. In many phrases zu stands instead of nach before names of places, as von Haus zu Haus, from house to house; zu Tische, Bette, zur Schule gehen, to go to dinner, to bed, to school; zu Felde ziehen, to go on an expedition; zu Boden sinken, to sink to the ground; zur Welt kommen, to come into the world.

3. *Through*, *out of*, when accompanied by hinein, herein, hinaus, heraus, as zum Fenster hinaus sehen, to look out of the window; zum Hofe herein kommen, to come in through the court-yard.

4. *By*, as zu Tausenden fallen, to fall by thousands.

5. *For;* for instance, das Zeichen zur Rückkehr, the sign for return; Ursache zu Thränen, cause for tears; es geschieht zu deinem Besten, it is done for

your best; mir zu Liebe, out of love for me; zu Nichts taugen, to be good for nothing.

6. Before the predicative object, as einen zum König wählen, to choose one king; zum Narren haben, to (treat one like a fool) make a fool of one; ein Mädchen zur Frau nehmen, to marry a girl; zum Feinde machen, to make one an enemy; zum Feinde werden, to become an enemy; es gereicht mir zum Schaden, zur Ehre, it tends to my injury, to my honour; ich nehme sie zur Tochter an, I adopt her as my daughter; ich thue es ihm zu Gefallen, I do it *as* a favour towards him; zum Besuche sein, to be (as a visitor) on a visit; etwas zur Schau tragen, to (carry about as a sight) display; zur Stütze dienen, to serve as a support.

7. In many adverbial expressions, as zu Fuß, zu Pferd, on foot, on horseback; zu Wasser und Land, by land and water; zu zweien singen, zu dreien tanzen, to sing two and two, to dance three and three; mir zur Seiten, by my side; zur Rechten, zur Linken, on the right, on the left; zu Grunde richten, to bring to ruin; zur Ader lassen (Blut understood), to bleed; zu Gericht sitzen, to sit in judgment.

zuwider, opposed, disgusting, as der Vernunft zuwider, against reason; es ist mir zuwider, it disgusts me, it resists me.

§ 5. ON THE PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

bis, till, as bis diesen Augenblick, until this moment; bis diesen Tag, until to-day.

Obs. Bis is generally used as an adverb before other prepositions and adverbs, as bis auf den heutigen Tag, up to this day; bis zum Abend, until the evening; bis an das blaue

Meer, as far as the blue sea; bis jetzt, until now; bis gestern, until yesterday.

durch means—1. *through*, as durch das Haus, through the house; durch den ganzen Monat, through the whole month.

2. *By*, as durch seine Faulheit, by (through) his laziness; sie schützten sich durch Häute, they protected themselves by means of skins; er wurde durch mich befördert, he was advanced by my assistance.

für means—1. *for*, as wer nicht für mich ist, ist gegen mich, who is not for me, is against me; ein Geschenk für einen Freund, a present for a friend; ich fürchte für sein Heil, I fear for his safety.

2. *Towards*, as Liebe, Achtung für jemand, love, respect towards somebody; Liebhaberei für Hunde, fancy (towards) for dogs.

3. In many phrases corresponding to *of*, *with*, *upon*, as für die Kinder sorgen, to take care of the children; Mitleid für (mit) jemand haben, to have sympathy with, or compassion on, somebody.

4. It is used for the pretended identity of the predicates, as Schmeichelei für Wahrheit halten, to take flattery as truth; sich für einen Künstler ausgeben, to pretend to be an artist; etwas für wahr halten, to believe a thing to be true.

gegen means—1. *towards*, as er wendete sich gegen die Zuschauer, he turned towards the spectators; er ist gütig gegen mich, he is kind towards (to) me; gegen Osten, towards the east.

2. *Against*, as gegen den Wind segeln, to sail against the wind; gegen den Feind kämpfen, to fight against the enemy; es geschah gegen Recht und Billigkeit, it was done against right and equity.

3. *About*, before numerals, as es waren gegen

hundert Menschen da, there were about a hundred people there.

4. *In comparison with*, as gegen mich ist er ein Riese, in comparison with me he is a giant.

5. *In exchange for*, as Geld gegen einen Schein empfangen, to receive money in exchange for a note or bill; Kriegsgefangene gegen einander austauschen, to exchange prisoners of war.

sonder, without, is now antiquated, and only used in a few phrases, as sonder Zweifel, Scheu, Furcht, without doubt, fear; sonder Gleichen, without an equal, incomparable.

um means—1. *around*, as um den Tisch, around the table; um die Bühne, around the stage.

2. *About*, as ich rede, wie es mir ums Herz ist, I speak as it is about (in) my heart, *i.e.* as I feel; rings um uns, round about us; er ist stets um mich, he is always about me.

3. *Towards*, as um Ostern, towards Easter; um Mitternacht, towards midnight; um die sechste Stunde, towards the sixth hour.

4. *At*, as um fünf Uhr, at five o'clock.

5. *Of*, as um sein Geld, seine Ehre, sein Vermögen kommen, to be deprived of one's money, honour, property.

6. *Concerning, on account of*, as sich um einen bekümmern, to take care (for) concerning somebody; sich betrüben um jemand, to afflict one's-self (for) on account of some one; einen um etwas beneiden, to envy one (for) on account of something.

7. *For*, as um etwas bitten, to ask for something.

8. *By*, as um drei Jahre zu früh, by three years too early; um einen Freund ärmer, poorer by one friend; um einen Kopf größer, taller by a head.

wider means *against*, as er kämpft, spricht, handelt wider mich, he fights, speaks, acts against me; es ist wider die Natur, it is against nature; wider Willen thue ich nichts, I do nothing unwillingly; wider den Willen seiner Mutter, against the will of his mother.

§ 6. ON THE PREPOSITIONS WITH THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

I. On their Construction.

1. The prepositions an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen, refer to the relation of two or more things concerning space, and they are construed with the accusative when the verb implies a direction towards a point in space, and the dative when it implies no direction; for instance, das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, the book is lying on the table (with the dative, because the verb denotes no direction); but, ich lege das Buch auf den Tisch, I lay the book on the table (the verb legen implying the direction of my hand towards the table).

Obs. In the word indeß or indessen, meanwhile, in is construed with the genitive.

2. Therefore, the difference between ich gehe in die Stube, I enter the room, and ich gehe in der Stube, I walk about in the room; ich klopfe an die Thüre, I knock at the door (in stretching my hand towards the knocker), and ich klopfe an der Thüre, I knock, standing at the door; die Raupe kroch auf das Blatt, the caterpillar crawled on the leaf (understand von unten, from below), and die Raupe kroch auf dem Blatte, the caterpillar crawled about on the leaf; er verbarg sich in den Garten, he hid himself in the garden (making the garden the point of aim to which he

directed his steps, for the sake of hiding himself), and er verbarg sich in dem Garten hinter einen Strauch, he hid himself in the garden behind a bush (making, not the garden, but the bush in the garden the point of aim).

3. When the verb implies a mental direction, the accusative is likewise used after those prepositions; for instance, ich schreibe an Dich, I write to you; ich denke an ihn, I think of him; ich glaube an einen Gott, I believe in the existence of a God (because glauben implies a direction of the mind); but, ich zweifle an seiner Treue, I doubt of his fidelity (because zweiflen denotes, as the contrary of glauben, the absence of a direction of the mind): ich freue mich auf das Fest, I rejoice in the expectation of the festival; but, ich erfreue mich an dem Anblicke des Meeres, I rejoice in the aspect of the sea (there being no direction, since the sight is before the speaker).

II. On the use of the Prepositions with the Dative and Accusative.

an (*a*) with the dative means—1. *on, in,* as das Bild hängt an der Wand, the picture hangs on the wall; an dem Ufer, on the shore; an einer Stelle, on a spot; an vielen Orten, in many places.

2. *By,* as er saß an dem Ofen, he sat by the stove; es stand an dem Wege, it stood by the roadside; an meiner Seite, by my side; am hellen Tage, by clear daylight.

3. *At, in, of,* as am Hofe leben, to live at court; an meiner Stelle, in my place; ich bemerkte eine Veränderung an ihm, I remarked a change in him; ich erfreue mich an dieser Nachricht, I rejoice in this news; an einer Sache Anstoß nehmen, to take offence

at a thing; Ueberfluß und Mangel an Dingen, abundance and want of things.

4. *By, from,* as sie starben am Uebermaße der genossenen Speisen, they died from excess of the food which they had taken; er erkannte mich an der Stimme, he recognized me by my voice.

(*b*) With the accusative—1. *on,* as er stürzte an den Rand, he fell on the brink.

2. *To,* as vom Morgen bis an den Abend, from morning to evening; bis an seinen Tod, up to his death; er wendete sich an mich, he appealed to me; ich gewöhne mich an ihn, I accustom myself to him.

3. *Of,* as an einen denken, to think of one.

4. *About,* before numerals, as an funfzig Reiter kamen vorbei, about fifty horsemen passed by.

auf (*a*) with dative means—1. *on,* as auf meiner Seite, on my side; auf der Rechten, on the right; auf beiden Augen, on both eyes; auf dem Wege, on the road; auf der Reise, on the journey.

2. *At,* as auf der Hochzeit, at the wedding; auf dem Mahle, at the feast; auf der Jagd, at the chase.

3. *In,* as auf der Straße, in the street; auf dem Felde, in the field; auf dem Markte, in the market-place; auf diesem Wege, in this way.

(*b*) With the accusative—1. *upon,* as es fiel auf die Erde, it fell upon the ground; er warf einen Stein auf das Dach, he threw a stone upon the roof; Einfluß auf einen haben, to have influence upon some one; auf Abenteuer ausziehen, to go out upon adventures; auf diese Nachricht, upon this news; auf mein Rufen, upon my calling; auf meine Ehre, upon my honour.

2. *To,* as einen Brief auf die Post tragen, to take a letter to the post; auf die hohe Schule gehen, to go

to the university; das geht auf mich, that refers to me; auf einen Ball, auf die Jagd, auf die Messe gehen, to go to a ball, a chase, a fair; aus Rücksicht auf mich, out of regard to me; das bezieht sich auf mein Wort, that refers to my word.

3. *For*, as ich verreise auf drei Jahre, I depart for three years; auf acht Tage etwas leihen, to lend a thing for eight days; auf einen warten, to wait for some one.

4. *On*, as auf den Glockenschlag neun, on the clock striking nine; er stellte sich auf den bestimmten Tag ein, he presented himself on the appointed day.

5. *In*, as Vertrauen auf Gott, trust in God; auf meine Weise, in my way; aufs beste, in the best way possible; er sagte es mir auf deutsch, he told it to me in German.

hinter, behind, as hinter dem Ofen, behind the stove; hinter meinem Rücken, behind me; den Gaul hinter den Wagen spannen, to put the cart before the horse.

in (*a*) with the dative means *in*, as in der That, indeed; in kurzem, in a short time.

(*b*) With the accusative, *in* and *into*, as in Thränen ausbrechen, to break forth in tears; in Wuth gerathen, to fall into a rage.

neben, near, beside, as er saß neben mir, he sat by my side; neben mir lag der Stamm, the trunk lay beside me; setzen Sie sich neben mich, sit down by me; er legte den Degen neben sich, he laid the sword by his side.

über (*a*) with the dative means—1. *over*, as das Fenster ist über der Thüre, the window is above the door.

2. *On the other side*, as über der Grenze ist man sicher, we are safe on the other side of the boundary.

3. *During*, as über dem Schreiben, during writing; über der Beschreibung vergaß er, during the description he forgot.

(*b*) With the accusative—1. *over*, *above*, *beyond*, as das Wasser stieg über die Berge, the water rose over the mountains; ich bin über das alles erhaben, I am over (beyond) all this; das geht mir über alles, that I esteem above all; das geht über meinen Verstand, that reaches beyond my comprehension; er hat die Aufsicht über das Haus, he has the superintendence over the house.

2. *During*, as über Nacht bleibe ich hier, I'll remain here during the night. Except this one phrase über stands, with this meaning, after its case, as den ganzen Tag über blieb ich zu Hause, I remained at home during the whole day; die ganze Woche über bin ich fleißig gewesen, I have been industrious during the whole week.

3. *After*, as über ein Jahr, after a year; heute über sieben Wochen werde ich zurückkommen, to-day seven weeks I shall return; über kurz oder lang, after a short time, or after a long one; über ein Kleines, after a short time; über Morgen, written, as an adverb, in one word, übermorgen, (a day) after to-morrow.

4. *About*, *concerning*, *of*, as über etwas sprechen, schreiben, sich vertragen, to speak of, to write, agree about a thing; ich ärgere mich über ihn, I am angry about (with) him; ich mache mich nicht über sie lustig, I do not laugh about (at) her; er war über diese Nachricht erschreckt, he was frightened about (at) this news.

5. *In consequence of*, *on account of*, as über dieses Buch habe ich meinen Spaziergang vergessen, I have

forgotten to take my walk in consequence of my reading this book; über ihre mißliche Lage wurden sie unzufrieden, they became dissatisfied in consequence of their critical situation; über seine Nachläßigkeit gerieth ich in Noth, I got in distress through his carelessness.

unter (*a*) with dative means—1. *under, underneath, beneath*, as es steht unter dem Dache, it is standing under the roof; er sitzt unter der Bank, he is sitting underneath the bench.

2. *During*, in pointing out a date, as unter dem heutigen Datum, during this day of the month.

3. *Among, between*, as viele unter uns, many among us; die Freundschaft unter Mädchen, friendship between girls.

(*b*) With the accusative—1. *under*, as er nahm ihn unter seinen Schutz, he took him under his protection; er versammelte sie unter eine Fahne, he assembled them under one standard.

2. *Amongst*, as er brachte Einigkeit unter sie, he brought harmony among them; er gerieth unter seine Feinde, he fell amongst his enemies.

vor (*a*) with the dative means—1. *before*, as ein Baum stand vor dem Hause, a tree stood before the house; er sprach vor der Versammlung, he spoke before the assembly; vor diesem or vor dem, formerly; vor kurzem, a short time ago; vor allen Dingen, or vor allem, before all things.

2. *Of, at*, in relation between verbs of fear, disgust, caution, and the objects of them, as ich fürchte mich vor ihm, I am afraid of him; mich ekelt vor diesem Anblicke, I feel disgusted at this sight; ich warne dich vor der Strafe, I remind you of the

punishment; hüte dich vor der Schlange, beware of that serpent.

3. *Through, on account, with,* as ich war trunken vor Freude, I was intoxicated with joy; das alles fiel vor der Hacke des Maurers, vor dem Beile des Zimmermanns, all this fell by the hatchet of the mason, by the axe of the carpenter; blaß vor Furcht, Neid, pale with fear, envy.

(*b*) With the accusative, means *before,* as vor den Richter bringen, to bring before the judge; einem vor die Augen kommen, to come before one's face.

zwischen, between, as ein Thal zwischen zwei Hügeln, a valley between two hills; es war ein Streit zwischen den Spaniern und Italienern, it was a dispute between the Spaniards and Italians; der Stein fiel zwischen die beiden Knaben, the stone fell between the two boys; er drängte es zwischen die beiden Kisten, he pressed it between the two boxes.

CHAP. III.—ON THE USE OF CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 1. ON THE USE OF COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Copulative conjunctions are—

a. Uniting, as und, and; auch, also; zudem, moreover; außerdem, besides; ingleichen and deßgleichen, likewise; so wohl—als auch, as well as; nicht nur (or nicht allein, nicht bloß)—sondern auch, not only—but also; weder—noch, neither—nor.

b. Continuing, as erst and zuerst, at first; dann, then; ferner and weiter, further; hernach and nachher, after; endlich, zuletzt, and schließlich, at last, in conclusion; erstens, for the first, or zum ersten, &c.

c. Partitive, as theils—theils, partly—partly, or zum Theil—zum Theil; einer Seits—andrer Seits, on one side—on the other side.

2. Of these conjunctions, und, and, has no influence over the construction; for instance, er kam, und ich ging, he came, and I went: auch, also, sowohl—als auch, as well as, weder—noch, neither—nor, have no influence when they refer to the subject, but they require the inversion when referring to the predicate and leading the sentence; for instance, du warst da; auch ich war da, you were there; I, too, was there: sowohl mein Bruder als auch mein Vater haben gesprochen, both my brother and father have spoken; weder sie noch ihre Schwester waren zu sehen, neither she nor her sister were to be seen. But, ich las, auch schrieb ich, I read and wrote too; sowohl hat er gelesen, als auch geschrieben, he has both read and written; weder hörte noch sah man etwas von ihr, we neither heard nor saw anything of her.

§ 2. ON THE USE OF ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The adversative conjunctions are aber, sondern, but; allein, indessen, gleichwohl, however; doch, jedoch, dennoch, still; dessenungeachtet, notwithstanding; vielmehr, rather.

2. Aber, sondern, and allein, have no influence over the construction, and aber can either begin the sentence, or follow after the subject; for instance, aber sein Gemüth wurde nicht milder, or sein Gemüth aber, &c., his temper did not soften; es ist wahr, allein die Sache ist wirklich merkwürdig, it is true, but the thing is really remarkable.

Doch and jedoch, when referring to the subject, do not influence the construction, but they require the

inversion when referring to the predicate; jedoch, besides, can either head the sentence or follow after the subject, as ich schwieg, doch er sagte, I was silent, yet he said; so sprach ich, doch setzte ich hinzu, thus I spoke, yet I added; er jedoch sagte nichts, or jedoch er sagte nicht, he, however, said nothing.

Indessen, gleichwohl, dennoch, when heading the sentence, require the inversion, as indessen will ich jetzt schweigen, however, I'll be silent for the present; gleichwohl konnte er sich vertheidigen, still he could defend himself; dennoch ist es nicht wahr, it is, with all that, not true.

3. Sondern is used instead of aber, when it heads a sentence which contradicts a preceding negative assertion; for instance, Schnee fällt nicht im Sommer, sondern im Winter, snow does not fall in summer, but in winter.

Obs. Sondern *denies*, aber *adds to* a negative assertion; therefore, ich habe es nicht gehört, sondern gesehen, would imply a wish to deny—it is not true; I have not heard it, but I have seen it. But if I said, ich habe es nicht gesehen, aber ich habe es gehört, this would imply—I grant you, I have not seen it; but I have heard of it.

4. Doch can always be used instead of dennoch, the latter, however, expresses the contrast more strongly; jedoch can never be used in a chief sentence when the subordinate precedes; for instance, so sehr er auch leidet, so klagt er doch (or dennoch, but not jedoch) nicht, however much he suffers, still he does not complain.

§ 3. ON THE USE OF THE DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

The disjunctive conjunctions are entweder—oder, either—or, by the first of which the construction can either be inverted or not, the latter has no influence; for instance,

entweder hat er es gethan, oder er hat es nicht gethan entweder er hat es gethan, oder er hat es nicht gethan	either he has done it, or he has not done it.

§ 4. ON CONJUNCTIONS REFERRING TO TIME AND PLACE.

1. Conjunctions referring to time and place are correlative to the adverbs of the same kind; for instance,

da or dort, there } daher—woher, thence—whence
wo, where } dahin—wohin, thither—whither
vorher—nachdem, before—after that (*après ce que*)
zuvor—seitdem, seit } before—since (*depuis ce que*)
damals—da, als, wie } then—when
indessen—während, meantime—whilst (*pendant ce que*)
bevor—ehe, before—that.

2. All sentences, headed by conjunctions of time and place, are construed as relative sentences; for instance, es geschah damals, als ich auf das Festland gereist war, it happened at the time when I had left for the continent; alles war indessen ruhig, während er das Land regierte, all was quiet whilst he ruled the country.

3. Als, as, expresses (*a*) perfect equality of two notions, as er starb als Held, he died as a hero: (*b*) an explanation by means of example; for instance, die Hausthiere, als Ochs, Esel, u.s.w., domestic animals, as ox, ass, &c.: (*c*) a comparison in reference to degree and measure; for instance, er ist so groß, gut, wohlthätig als du, he is as tall, good, beneficent as you: (*d*) a comparison in the comparative degree, as er ist reicher als ich, he is richer than I: (*e*) simultaneousness, the English *as;* for instance, sobald als, as soon as; so lange als, as long as. This als can be omitted; for instance, so oft ich ihn sah, as often as I saw him: (*f*) an exclusion after a negative, the English *but*, as man muß sich auf Niemand als Gott verlassen, we must rely upon *none but* God.

4. Als, da, wie refer to the sameness of time; wie, however, refers more to the moment, to the point of time when another thing happened, as wie ich auf die Straße hinauskam, schlug der Blitz neben mir ein, just as I was stepping out into the street, the lightning struck near me.

5. The English *before* corresponds both to the adverb bevor (*avant, antea*), and to the conjunction ehe (*avant que, antequam*). In ehe the time is often left out of view, as ehe ich hier bleibe, gehe ich lieber nach Sibirien, I would rather go to Siberia than stay here.

§ 5. ON CONJUNCTIONS REFERRING TO QUALITY, QUANTITY, AND INTENSITY.

1. Conjunctions referring to quality, quantity, and intensity, are also correlative to preceding adverbs; for instance,

so—wie, thus—as
also—gleichwie, thus—as

in ſo fern—als, in as far—as
in ſo weit—in wie weit, in so far—in as far
nicht anders—als, not otherwise than
je—je, the—the
desto—je } by so much more—by as much more.
um ſo—je }

2. Sentences beginning with such conjunctions are relative, and construed as such; for instance, es iſt noch ſo gut, wie es vor Jahren geweſen iſt, it is still as good as it was years ago.

3. Of these correlative sentences, the subordinates generally precede the chief ones; for instance, gleichwie der Frühling die Natur belebt, ſo belebt das gute Wort eines Dichters die Menſchen, as the spring reanimates nature, thus the inspired word of a poet reanimates mankind; je mehr das Unglück einen edlen Menſchen verfolgt, deſto mehr entwickelt ſich ſeine Kraft, the more a noble-hearted man is pursued by misfortune, the more his energies are aroused. Of the correlative sentences with nicht anders—als, however, the chief must precede, as er handelte nicht anders, als ich gedacht habe, he did not act otherwise than I expected.

4. So is used—

a. Often in the beginning of chief sentences, when the subordinates precede; for instance, da du nicht dein Wort gehalten haſt, ſo mußt du nicht auf mein Zutrauen rechnen, since you did not keep your word, you must not reckon on my confidence.

b. For the English *as* in relative sentences; for instance, ſo reich er iſt, ſo freigebig iſt er, he is as liberal as he is rich.

c. For the English *however* in the subordinates, as ſo ſehr ich ihn liebe, doch beſtrafe ich ihn, however much

I love him, still I punish him. The particle auch is generally inserted in the relative sentence; for instance, so viel du auch verloren hast, du bist dennoch ein reicher Mann, however much you have lost, you are still a rich man.

d. For the English *as far as;* for instance, so viel ich gehört habe, as far as I have heard.

e. Instead of wenn, if; for instance, so er es spricht, so geschieht es, if he says a thing, it is accomplished.

5. Je is used—

a. With nachdem following, meaning *according as;* for instance, er verdient Lob, je nachdem er sich beträgt, he deserves praise according as he behaves.

b. When je heads the relative sentence, the chief can begin either with je, or desto, or um so, and they are always accompanied by the comparative degree. However, je—je are only used in small sentences, as je länger du wartest, je schlimmer es ist, the longer you wait, the worse it gets. Instead of je—desto, can also be used desto—je; for instance, je mehr er erwarb, desto mehr wollte er haben, the more he acquired, the more he wished to possess; er überzeugte mich desto weniger, je mehr er sprach, the more he spoke, the less he convinced me. Desto and um so, or um so viel, are often used without a preceding sentence headed by je, as desto besser, so much the better; um so schlimmer, or um so viel schlimmer ist es, so much the worse it is.

§ 6. ON CONJUNCTIONS REFERRING TO CAUSE AND EFFECT.

1. Conjunctions referring to cause are—denn, for; nämlich, namely; weil, because; da, indem, since; nun, now that; daher, therefore; darum, deswegen, on that account.

2. Conjunctions referring to effect are—ſo daß, so that; alſo, thus; folglich, mithin, consequently; ſo nach, demnach, accordingly; wonach, according to which; weshalb, weswegen, deshalb, on account of which.

3. Conjunctions referring to an aim and intention are—dazu, zu dem Ende, to that end; darum, deswegen, for that purpose; auf daß, damit, um zu, in order that.

4. Conjunctions referring to a condition are—denn, unless; ſonſt, else; wenn, if; falls, in case that; wofern, if; wo nicht, if not; dann, in that case.

5. Conjunctions referring to a concession are—zwar, it is true, indeed; wohl, well; ob, obauch, obgleich, obſchon, obzwar, wie wohl, wenn gleich, wenn ſchon, although; ungeachtet, notwithstanding that.

6. Of all these conjunctions, only *two* have *no* influence over the construction—denn, for, and nämlich, namely. The latter can head the sentence or be inserted, as nämlich er ſagte, or er ſagte nämlich. All the others, when heading a subordinate sentence, cause the verb to stand at the end; and, when beginning a chief sentence, require the inversion; for instance, weil er unrecht gehandelt hat, darum muß er nun leiden, he must now suffer, because he has acted wrongly.

§ 7. ON THE PARTICULAR USE OF SOME CONJUNCTIONS REFERRING TO CAUSE AND EFFECT.

Dann is used—1. as the English *then*, to point out the continuation; for instance, erſt arbeiten, dann raſten wir, we work first, then we rest.

2. Instead of ſo, when heading a chief sentence which follows a conditional subordinate; for instance, wenn dem ſo iſt, dann habe ich nichts mehr zu ſagen, if it is so, I have no more to say.

denn means—1. *than*, after the comparative; for instance, er ist größer als Krieger denn als Staatsmann, he is greater as a warrior than as a statesman.

2. A negative condition or exception, *unless, provided not*, as ich verlasse dieses Zimmer nicht, du gestehst mir denn alles, I shall not leave this room unless you confess all; ich thue es, er müsse denn mich fesseln, I'll do it, provided that he does not put me into chains.

3. *For*, giving a logical reason for an assertion; for instance, es ist jetzt Herbst, denn die Früchte werden eingesammelt, it is now autumn, for the fruits are being gathered.

da, since, is like denn in pointing out a logical reason; for instance, da es naß ist, muß es geregnet haben, since it is wet, it must have rained; da die drei Winkel des Dreiecks gleich sind, ist es also gleichseitig, since the three angles of the triangle are equal, therefore it is equilateral.

indem means—1. *as*, and is synonymous with als and wie (cf. p. 278. 4).

2. *Whilst*, as er ging fort, indem er dieses sagte, he went away whilst saying this. This indem is generally expressed, in English, by the participle present, as—saying this, he went away.

3. *Since*, and often synonymous with da; for instance, ich kann nicht ausgehen, indem ich mir den Fuß verrenkt habe, I cannot go out, having sprained my foot. Often it only refers to a by-action; for instance, ich werde nicht kommen, indem ich noch einiges schreiben, well, I shall not come, being desirous to write several things yet.

weil, because, refers *always* to the *real*, or *moral* cause, and answers to the question warum? why?

for instance, es ist warm, it is warm; warum? why? weil die Sonne scheint, *because* the sun is shining. Er schickte den Diener fort, he sent away his servant; warum? why? weil er nicht seine Pflicht that, *because* he did not do his duty.

nun, now that, with da to be understood; for instance, ich habe ihm geschrieben; nun er aber nicht antwortet, beginne ich zu fürchten, I have written to him; but *now*, *since* he does not answer, I begin to fear.

auf daß, damit, um zu, in order that, in order to. If the subject of the chief sentence is the same as that in the subordinate, all these three can indiscriminately be used (in English, *in order to*); for instance, ich thue dieses, auf daß ich erfahre, or damit ich erfahre, or um zu erfahren, I am doing this in order to learn. But if the subjects are different, only the two first can be employed (*in order that*, in English), as er that dieses, auf daß, or damit wir erfahren, he did it in order that we might learn. Um zu is used, besides, instead of als um zu, after zu with an adverb or adjective, as es ist zu schlecht, um es zu glauben, it is too bad to be believed.

wann, when, is only used in direct and indirect questions; for instance, wann wird er kommen? when will he come? ich weiß nicht, wann er kommen wird, I do not know when he will come.

wenn means—1. *if*, in conditions; wenn er das gesagt hat, dann hat er eine Unwahrheit gesagt, if he has said so, then he has told an untruth.

2. *When*, referring to the future time; for instance, wenn du ihn sehen wirst, kannst du es ihm sagen, you can tell it to him when you see him.

3. *When*, as much as *whenever*, referring to a

repetition of the action; for instance, wenn ich ihm begegnete, war er immer in Gedanken, whenever I met him, he was absorbed in thought.

4. *Although*, when followed by auch, schon, gleich; for instance, wenn er es auch gethan hat, suppose he has done it; wenn wir schon den Preis erhielten, sollten wir deshalb nicht mehr arbeiten? granted that we have received the prize, should we therefore leave off studying? wenn er gleich viele Sprachen versteht, er ist doch nicht eingenommen von sich, although he understands many languages, still he is not conceited.

wo, followed by nicht, fern, and möglich, is used instead of wenn; for instance, thue das, wo nicht, muß ich meine Reise aufschieben, do this, *if not* (else) I must postpone my journey; thue dies, wo möglich, bald, do this, if possible, soon; wofern er es gewagt hat, if (in case that) he has ventured it.

§ 8. ON THE USE OF CONJUNCTIONS REFERRING TO GRAMMATICAL DEPENDENCE.

1. Two conjunctions point out the grammatical dependence of sentences upon each other, and both influence the construction, always heading subordinate sentences. They are ob and daß.

2. Ob means—

1. *If, whether*, (*a*) in the indirect question; for instance, ich weiß nicht, ob es wahr ist, I do not know if it is true: and (*b*) after als—als ob, as if; for instance, als ob ich nicht wüßte, *as if* I did not know.

2. *Although* (the same as wenn), when followed by gleich, wohl, schon, auch, zwar, as ob gleich, ob schon, ob auch, obwohl, obzwar. The first three can be separated by the insertion of a pronoun, or some other small

word; for instance, ob er gleich mein Freund ist, although he is my friend; ob ihm schon Unrecht geschah, although injustice was done to him; ob ich auch viel litt, although I suffered much. The latter two must always remain together; for instance, obwohl or obzwar er es gehört hat, although he has heard it. Instead of obwohl, the compound wiewohl can be used, as wiewohl es mir leid thut, although I am sorry.

3. Daß, that, is—

1. Originally the neuter article, and is put before sentences to introduce them as substantives of other sentences, and that in all four cases; for instance,

Nom. daß du krank bist, thut mir Leid, that you are ill (*this*) gives me pain

Gen. man beschuldigte ihn, daß er gestohlen, they accused him *of* having stolen

Dat. daß du offen sprichst, (dem) weiß ich Dank, I am thankful (for that) that you speak openly

Accus. daß du gütig warst, werde ich nie vergessen, I shall never forget that you were kind.

2. And as the article with a case follows a preposition, thus daß, heading a sentence, is preceded by a preposition; for instance, du hast gespielt, statt daß du arbeiten solltest, you have been playing, whilst you ought to have been at work.

3. This daß is often omitted—

a. After the prepositions während and ungeachtet, as während (daß) ich schlief, whilst I was asleep; ungeachtet (daß) ich ihn warnte, notwithstanding that I reminded him.

b. After the adverbs indem, in the moment; seitdem, since the time; nachdem, after the time; indeß and unterdeß, during the time; falls, in case; ehe and bevor, before the time; bis, till the time; for instance,

seitdem (daß) ich den Brief erhielt, since I received the letter (depuis *que*); nachdem (daß) ich das erfahren hatte, after that I had learned this (après *que*, post-*quam*); falls (daß) du mir nicht schreibst, in case that you do not write; ich wartete, bis (daß) er kam, I waited until he came (jusqu'à ce *que*).

4. Daß is often used for the conjunctions which denote the condition, the cause, the intention, and the consequence, wenn, weil, damit, so daß; for instance, es sollte mich wundern, daß er nicht kommt, I shall be astonished, *if* he does not come; ich grâme mich, daß er nicht schreibt, I am grieving because he does not write; ich schicke dich, daß du mit ihm sprechest, I send you, in order that you may talk to him; es regnet, daß man nicht aus dem Hause gehen kann, it is raining *so that* one cannot leave one's house.

CHAP. IV.—ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

1. Interjections are both independent of other parts in the sentence, and have no influence over them. They can stand before all cases; for instance, o der Arme! oh, that poor man! o des Armen! oh, pity on that poor man! o dem Narren! this fool has met with his due! o den Jammer! ah, that I must live to see such misery!

2. But the case following an interjection is generally depending upon an omitted verb, which must be understood; for instance, weh (understand ist) mir! woe is me! wehe dir! woe to thee! heil (sei) dem König! hail the king! Gott (sei) Lob! God be praised! wer (ist) da? who is there?

3. After o! ach! pfui! the genitive is generally following, without any omitted verb being understood; for instance, o des Narren! what a fool! ach des Unglücks! what a misfortune! pfui der Schande! what a shame! Instead of the genitive after these exclamations, über with the accusative can be used, as o über den Narren! ach über das Unglück! pfui über die Schande! However, although no verb is here omitted, still a notion of astonishment, joy, or admiration, must be understood before such *genitives*, or the preposition über with the accusative.

THE END.

GILBERT & RIVINGTON, Printers, St. John's Square, London.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 225 058 0

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 225 058 0